
Chapter 1. Module 6: Arranging a meeting

Table of Contents

Objectives	2
Unit 1 Target List	3
Unit 2 Target List	5
Unit 3 Target List	7
Unit 4 Target List	9
Unit 5 Target List	11
Unit 6 Target List	13
Unit 7 Target List	15
Unit 8 Target List	17
Unit 1	19
References	19
Drills	31
Unit 2	56
References	56
Drills	74
Unit 3	98
References	98
Drills	110
Unit 4	134
References	134
Drills	146
Unit 5	157
References	157
Drills	171
Unit 6	191
References	191
Drills	202
Unit 7	220
References	220
Drills	236
Unit 8	253
References	253
Drills	263

The Meeting Module (MTG) will provide you with the skills needed to arrange meetings or social gatherings, to greet people, to make introductions, and to accept or decline invitations in Chinese.

Before starting this module, you must take and pass the TRN Criterion Test.

The MTG Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO, MON, DIR, TRN, and associated resource modules is also included.

Objectives

Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to

1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the MTG Target Lists.
2. Say any Chinese sentence in the MTG Target Lists when cued with English equivalent.
3. Make and respond to introductions with appropriate polite questions and answers.
4. Make phone calls and leave messages.
5. Arrange a meeting (time and place) with someone by talking with him or his secretary either in person or by phone.
6. Request that the time of a meeting be changed.
7. Invite a person to lunch, deciding on the time and the restaurant.
8. Arrange a social gathering for a specific time of day, inviting guests to his home and encouraging them to accept the invitation.
9. Greet guests upon their arrival at his home.
10. Accept/decline a social/business invitation with the appropriate degree of politeness.

Unit 1 Target List

1. Wèi, nǐ shì Zhū Kēzhǎng ma?

喂, 你是朱科長嗎?

Hello. Are you Section Chief Zhū?

Shì. Nín shì něiwèi?

是。您是哪位?

Yes. Who is this, please?

Wǒ shì Wēilián Mǎdīng

我是威廉馬丁。

I'm William Martin.

Òu, Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn.

哦, 馬丁先生, 好久不見。

Oh, Mr. Martin—I haven't seen you for a long time.

2. Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有點兒事想跟您當面談談。

I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.

3. Nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu?

您有功夫沒有?

Do you have any free time?

4. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?

什麼時候對您合適?

What time would suit you?

5. Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāngbian yìdiǎnr. Yīnwei wǒ yīhuǐr chūqu, yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn huíbulái.

三點比兩點方便一點兒。因為一會兒出去, 也許兩點回不來。

Three would be more convenient than two. Since I'm going out in a little while, I might not be able to get back by two.

Nàme#wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng zài lóuxiàde huìkèsì děng nín.

那麼, 我三點鐘在樓下的會客室等您。

Well then, I'll wait for you in the reception room downstairs at three o'clock.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. huídelái
回得來
to be able to get back in time

7. kòng(r)
空(兒)
free time, spare time

8. lóushàng
樓上
upstairs

9. shāngliang
商量
to discuss, to talk over

10. yǒu kòng(r)
有空(兒)
to have free time

Unit 2 Target List

1. Wèi, Měidàsī.

喂, 美大司。

Hello. Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.

Wǒ shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎnde Qiáozhì Dáfēi. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Kēzhǎng jiǎng-yíjiǎng.

我是加拿大大使館的喬治達菲。我有一件事想跟王科長講一講。

I am George Duffy of the Canadian Embassy. I have something I would like to discuss with Section Chief Wáng.

2. Wáng Kēzhǎng xiànzài zài kāi huì. Dèng tā kāiwán huì wǒ gàosong tā gěi ni huí diànhuà.

王科長現在在開會。等她開完會我告訴告訴她給你回電話。

Section Chief Wáng is at a meeting now. When she is finished with the meeting, I will tell her to return your call.

3. Hǎo, xièxie ni.

好, 謝謝你。

Fine. Thank you.

Bú xiè.

不謝。

Don't mention it.

4. Nǐ dǎ diànhuà láide shíhou wǒ méi shíjiān gēn ni shuō huà.

你打電話來的時候我沒時間跟你說話。

When you called here, I didn't have time to speak with you.

Méi guānxi.

沒關係。

It doesn't matter.

5. Wǒ gěi ni dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì xiǎng gēn ni dāngmiàn tán-tán.

我給你打電話目的是想跟你當面談談。

The reason I called you is that I would like to talk with you in person.

Nǐ míngtiān néng bu néng dào wǒ zhèr lái?

你明天能不能到我這兒來？

Can you come over here tomorrow?

Kéyi. Míngtiān shénme shíhou dōu kéyi.

你明天能不能到我這兒來？

Yes. Any time tomorrow would be fine.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. guānxi
關係
relation, relationship, connection
7. jiǎng huà
講話
to speak, to talk; a speech
8. lǐngshìguǎn
領事館
consulate
9. shìqing (yíjiàn)
事情 (一件)
matter, business, affair
10. sīzhǎng
司長
department chief
11. yǒu guānxi
有關係
to relate to, to have a bearing on, to matter

Unit 3 Target List

1. Wǒ xiǎng xiàge Xīngqīliù qǐng nín dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.
我想下個星期六請您到我們家來吃個便飯。
I would like to invite you to come to our house for a simple meal on Saturday of next week.

Nín hébì zhème kèqì?
您何必這麼客氣？
Why is it necessary to be so polite?
2. Wǒ yǒu yige Měiguó péngyou zài Táiwan Dàxué jiāo shū. Hěn xiǎng gěi nimen liǎngwèi jièshào jièshào.
我有一個美國朋友在臺灣大學教書。很想給你們兩位介紹介紹。
I have an American friend who teaches at Táiwan University. I would very much like to introduce the two of you.

Nà tài hǎo le!
你太好了！
That's wonderful!
3. Wǒ hěn xīwang gēn nǐ péngyou tán tán.
我很希望跟你朋友談談。
I wish very much to talk with your friend.

Búguò, kǒngpà wǒde Yīngwén bù xíng.
不過，恐怕我的英文不行。
However, I'm afraid that my English isn't good enough.

Búdàn shuōde bù hǎo, yǒu shíhou yě tīngbudǒng.
不但說得不好，有時候也聽不懂。
Not only don't I speak well, (but) sometimes I can't understand what I hear either.
4. Nǐ shuōde gēn Měiguó rén yíyàng hǎo.
你說得跟美國人一樣。
You speak as well as an American.
5. Wǒ méi qǐng shénme rén; hěn suíbiàn.
我沒請什麼人；很隨便。
I haven't invited anyone special; it's very informal.

Nà jiù xiān xiè le.

那就先謝了。

Well then, I'll thank you in advance.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. bù tóng

不同

to be different

7. chá

茶

tea

8. chī fàn

吃飯

to eat, to have a meal

9. dànshi

但是

but

10. érqiě

而且

furthermore, moreover

11. fàn

飯

(cooked) rice

12. hē

喝

to drink

13. jiāo shū

教書

to teach

Unit 4 Target List

1. Hé Jiàoshòu, huānyíng, huānyíng. Qǐng jìn.

何教授，歡迎，歡迎。請進。

Professor Hollins, welcome. Please come in.

Zhè shì yìdiǎn xiǎo yìsi.

這是一點小意思。

Here is a small token of appreciation.

2. Wǒ zhīdao nín xǐhuan shānshuǐ huà.

我知道您喜歡山水畫。

I know you like landscape painting.

Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huàle yìzhāng.

特別請朋友給您畫一張。

I asked a friend to paint one especially for you.

3. Zhèwèi shì Hé Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo shū.

這位是何教授，在台大教書。

This is Professor Hollins, who teaches at **Táiwān** University.

Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.

久仰，久仰。

Glad to meet you.

4. Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō bù shóuxide dìfang yào xiàng nín qǐngjiào.

我還有很多不熟悉的地方要向您請教。

There is still much I'm not familiar with that I need to ask your advice about.

5. Xīwang yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō jiànmiàn.

希望以後有機會多見面。

I hope that in the future we will have an opportunity to meet more.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. fāngfǎ

方法

method, way, means

7. fǎzi
法子
method, way
8. huàr
畫兒
painting (Běijīng pronunciation)
9. qǐng zuò
請坐
please sit down
10. shèhuìxué
社會學
sociology
11. túshūguǎn
圖書館
library
12. zuò
坐
to sit

Unit 5 Target List

1. Wài.

喂

Hello.

Wèi, shì Wàijiāobù ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà.

喂，外交部嗎？我要找林司長說話。

Hello. Is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs? I want to speak with Department Chief Lin.

Nín shì nǎr a?

您是那兒啊？

Who is this?

Wǒ shì Fǎguó Shāngwù Jīngjìguān.

我是法國商務經濟官。

I am the French Commercial/Economics Officer.

2. Lín Sīzhǎng zhèihuìr bú zài. Nín yào liú ge huàr ma?

林司長這會兒不在。

Department Chief Lin is not here at the moment. Would you like to leave a message?

3. Wǒ bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎ xiěxiàlái.

我把您的電話號兒寫下來。

I'll write down your phone number.

4. Duibuqǐ, nǐ gāngcái gěi wǒ da diànhuà, wǒ bú zài.

對不起，你剛才給我打電話，我不在。

I'm sorry. When you called me just now, I wasn't in.

5. Wǒ nàitiān gēn nín yuēhǎole jīntiān dào nín bàngōngshì qu tán-tán.

我那天跟您約好了今天到辦公室去談談。

The other day I made an appointment with you to go to your office today for a talk.

Yīnwei wǒ yǒu yíjiàn yào jǐn de shì, suǒyǐ bù néng jīntiān qù.

因為我有一件要緊的事，所以不能今天去。

Because I have an urgent business matter, I can't go today.

Gǎi dào míngtiān xíng bu xíng?

改到明天行不行？

Would it be all right to change it [the appointment] to tomorrow?

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. háishi
還是
still
7. wàiguo
外國
foreign, abroad
8. wàiguo rén
外國人
foreigner (non-Chinese)
9. wūzi (yìjiān)
屋子 (一間)
room
10. yāo
幺
one (telephone pronunciation)

Unit 6 Target List

1. Wǒmen dào Dōngmén Cāntīng qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo bu hǎo?
我們到東門餐廳去吃中飯，好不好？
Let's go to the East Gate Restaurant to eat lunch. Okay?

Dōngmén de cài méiyǒu Dàhuá de cài nàme hǎo.
東門的菜沒有大華菜那麼好。
The food at the East Gate isn't as good as the food at the Great China.
2. Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshì lí zhèlǐ jìn.
雖然不太好，可是離這裏近。
Even though it [East Gate] is not too good, it is close to us.

Hái yǒu yíge xīn kāide fànguǎnzi lí wǒmen zhèlǐ gèng jìn.
還有一個新開的飯館子離我們這裏更近。
There is also a newly opened restaurant that is even closer to us.
3. Tāmen nàlǐ de cài fēicháng hǎo. Jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ dào nàlǐ qù chī.
它們那裏菜非常好。今天我請你到那裏去吃。
The food there is extremely good. Today I am going to invite you to go there to eat.

Nà bù hǎo yìsi!
那不好意思！
I can't let you do that! (That would be too embarrassing!)
4. Dàhuá de cài yòu hǎo yòu piányi.
大華的菜又好又便宜。
The food at the Great China is both good and cheap.

Yě yǒu hǎoxiē cài bié de dìfang chībuzháo.
也有好些菜別的地方吃不找。
They also have a good many dishes that you can't find (at) other places.
5. Nǐ shuō de dìfang yíding hǎo.
你說的地方一定好。
Any place you suggest is sure to be good.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. **bù yíding**
不一定
not necessarily; it's not definite
7. **kànfǎ**
看法
opinion, view
8. **wǎnfàn**
晚飯
supper, dinner
9. **xiǎngfǎ**
想法
idea, opinion
10. **yìxiē**
一些
some, several, a few
11. **zǎofàn**
早飯
breakfast
12. **zuòfǎ**
做法
way of doing things, method, practice

Unit 7 Target List

1. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

我有一件事想跟您打聽打聽。

I have something I would like to ask you about.

Tīngshuō nín nàbian xīn lái yíwèi Fāng Xiānsheng; tāde míngzi wǒ wàngjì le.

聽說您那邊新來了一位方先生；他的名字我忘記了。

I have heard that you recently had a Mr. Fāng join you. I have forgotten his given name.

2. Bú cuò, Fāng Déming shì shàngge libài pài dào wǒmen zhèli lái de.

不錯，方德明是上個禮拜派到我們這裏來的。

That's right. Fāng Déming was sent over here last week.

Zěnmé? Nǐ rènshi ta ma?

怎麼？你認識他嗎？

Why? Do you know him?

3. Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyè de.

我是加州大學畢業的。

I graduated from the University of California.

4. Nǐ néng bu néng mǎshàng dào wǒ bàngōngshì lái?

你能不能馬上到我辦公室來？

Can you come to my office right away?

Méi wèntí. Chābùduō bànge zhōngtóu jiù dào.

沒問題。差不多半個鐘頭就到。

No problem. I'll be there in about half an hour.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

5. jìde

記得

to remember

6. rènde

認得

to recognize, to know (alternate word for rènshi)

7. **rènshi zì**
認識字
to know how to read (literally, “to recognize characters”)
8. **wàng**
忘
to forget (alternate word for **wàngji**, especially in the sense of forgetting to DO something)
9. **wánquán**
完全
completely
10. **xiǎngqilai**
想起來
to think of, to remember
11. **zuǒyòu**
左右
approximately

Unit 8 Target List

1. Wài, zhèi shì Lǐbīnsī.

喂，這是禮賓司。

Hello. This is the Protocol Department.

Wèi, wǒ shì Láidēng Dàshǐde mìshū.

喂，我是萊登大使的秘書。

Hello. I am Ambassador Leyden's secretary.

2. Dàshǐ jiēzháo nǐmende qǐngtiē le.

大使接著你們的請帖了。

The ambassador received your invitation.

Hěn kěxī yīnwei tā yǒu shì, Báyue jiǔhào bù néng lái.

很可惜因為他有事，八月九號不能來。

Unfortunately, because he has a previous engagement, he cannot come on August 9#

Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào Qiáo Bùzhǎng.

請你轉告譙部長。

Please inform Minister Qiao.

Hěn bàoqiàn.

很抱歉。

I'm very sorry.

3. Hěn yíhàn, tā bù néng lái.

很遺憾，他不能來。

We very much regret that he cannot come.

Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào yíxià.

我替你轉告一下。

I will pass on the message for you.

4. Xīwàng yǐhòu zài zhǎo jīhuì jùjù ba.

希望以後在找機會聚一聚吧。

I hope that later we will find another opportunity to get together.

5. Zhēn bù qiǎo, méi bànfa qù.

真不巧，沒辦法去。

I really couldn't make that; I have no way of going.

6. Wǒmen yǒu jǐge tóngxué jìhuà dào Chángchéng qù wánr.

我們有幾個同學計劃到長城去玩兒。

A few of us students are planning to go to the Great Wall for an outing.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

7. dàjiā

大家

everybody, everyone

8. jiēdào

接到

to receive (alternate form of jiēzhào)

9. tóngshi

同事

fellow worker, colleague

10. yīngāi

應該

should, ought to, must

Unit 1

References

Reference List

1. B: **Wéi.**
喂
Hello.
A: **Wài, nǐ shì Zhū Kēzhǎng ma?**
喂，你是朱科長嗎？
Hello. Are you Section Chief Zhū?
B: **Shì. Nín shì nǎiwèi?**
是。您是哪位？
Yes. Who is this, please?
A: **Wǒ shì Wēilián Mǎdīng.**
我是威廉馬丁。
I'm William Martin.
B:^a **Òu, Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Nǐ hǎo a?**
哦，馬丁先生，好久不見。你好啊？
Oh, Mr. Martin—I haven't seen you for quite a while. How are you?
A: **Hǎo. Nǐ hǎo a?**
好。你好啊？
Fine. How are you?
2. A: **Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tán.**
我有點兒事想跟您當面談談。
I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.
3. A: **Bù zhīdào nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.**
不知道您有工夫沒有。
I don't know whether you have the time or not.
B: **Yǒu gōngfu.**
有功夫。
I have the time.
4. A: **Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?**
什麼時候對您合適？
What time would suit you?
B: **Jīntiān, míngtiān dōu kényi.**

今天，明天都可以。

Either today or tomorrow would be fine.

5. A: Jīntiān xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn zhōng fāngbian ma?

今天下午兩點鐘方便嗎？

Would two o'clock today be convenient?

- B: Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāngbian yidiǎnr.

三點比兩點方便一點兒。

Three would be more convenient than two.

6. B: Yīnwēi wǒ yīhuǐr chūqu, yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn huíbulái.

因為我一會兒出去，也許兩點回不來。

Since I'm going out in a little while, I might not be able to get back by two.

7. B: Nàme, wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng zài lóuxiàde huìkèshì děng nín.

那麼，我三點鐘在樓下的會客室等您。

Well then, I'll wait for you in the reception room downstairs at three o'clock.

- A: Hǎo, sāndiǎn jiàn.

好，三點見。

Fine. I'll see you at three.

Additional Vocabulary

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8. huídelái

回得來

to be able to get back in time

9. kòng(r)

空兒

free time, spare time

10. lóushàng

樓上

upstairs

11. shāngliang

商量

to discuss, to talk over

12. yǒu kòng(r)

有空兒

to have free time

^aThe remaining sentences in this exchange occur on the C-1 tape.

Vocabulary

bǐ	比	compared with, than
dāngmiàn	當面	in person, face to face
duì	對	to, towards; with regard to, with respect to
gōngfu	功夫	free time, spare time
héshì	合適	to be suitable, to be appropriate, to fit
huíbulái	回不來	to be unable to get back
huídelái	回得來	to be able to get back in time
huìkèshì (huìkèshǐ)	會客室	reception room
kēzhǎng	科長	section chief
kòng(r)	空兒	free time, spare time
lóushàng	樓上	upstairs
lóuxià	樓下	downstairs
nàme	那麼	well, then, in that case
shāngliang	商量	to discuss, to talk over
tán	談	to chat, to talk about
wéi	喂	hello (telephone greeting)
yěxǔ	也許	perhaps, maybe
yìhuǐr	一會兒	a moment
yǒu gōngfu	有功夫	to have free time
yǒu kòng(r)	有空兒	to have free time
(Introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)		
chūkǒu gōngsī	出口公司	export company
huì kè	會客	to receive guests
xiē	些	several, some
yǒu yòng	有用	to be useful

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. B: **Wéi.**
喂
Hello.
- A: **Wài, nǐ shì Zhū Kēzhǎng ma?**
喂，你是朱科長嗎？
Hello. Are you Section Chief Zhū?
- B: **Shì. Nín shì nǐwèi?**
是。您是哪位？
Yes. Who is this, please?
- A: **Wǒ shì Wēilián Mǎdīng.**
我是威廉馬丁。
I'm William Martin.
- B: **Òu, Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Nǐ hǎo a?**
哦，馬丁先生，好久不見。你好啊？
Oh, Mr. Martin—I haven't seen you for quite a while. How are you?
- A: **Hǎo. Nǐ hǎo a?**
好。你好啊？
Fine. How are you?

Wéi is a greeting used in telephone conversations for “hello.” Some speakers pronounce this greeting as **wài**. Unlike most Chinese words, **wèi** has no fixed tone. The intonation varies according to the speaker's mood.

Kēzhǎng: **Kē** means “section,” and **zhǎng** means “head of an organization.” Here are some examples of how **-zhǎng**, “chief,” “head,” is used:

kē	科	section
kēzhǎng	科長	section chief
chù	處	division
chùzhǎng	處長	division chief
xuéxiào	學校	school
xiàozhǎng	校長	principal, headmaster

Nín shì nǐwèi? Note the use of the polite terms **nín** and **nǐwèi**. In the English translation, politeness is expressed by the use of the more indirect “Who is this” instead of “Who are you” and also by “please.”

Hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn, “I haven't seen you for quite a while,” is interchangeable with **hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn**.

Notes on №2

2. A: **Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tán.**

我有點兒事想跟您當面談談。

I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.

Gēn: In No. 2 the word **gēn** is a prepositional verb translated as “with.” The preposition **gēn**, “with,” differs from the conjunction **gēn**, “and,” in two important ways: a) where stress may be placed b) where the negative may be placed.

a. When **gēn** is used as the conjunction “and,” both items being joined are stressed and keep their tones. When **gēn** is used as the prepositional verb “with,” a pronoun which follows is unstressed and loses its tone. Notice the contrasting tones on **tā** in the following sentences:

我跟他都來了。	Both he and I came.
Wǒ gēn tā dōu lái le.	
我跟他來。	I'll come with him.
Wǒ gēn tā lái.	

b. To make negative a sentence containing the conjunction **gēn**, “and,” the negative is placed with the main verb. In sentences containing the prepositional verb **gēn**, “with,” the negative precedes the prepositional verb. (You have seen this pattern with other prepositional verbs, for example, **zài** [see BIO, Unit 2, notes on Nos. 8–11].) Notice the contrasting positions of the negatives in the examples below:

我跟他都沒有去。	Neither he nor I went.
Wǒ gēn tā dōu méiyǒu qù.	
我沒有跟他去。	I didn't go with him.
Wǒ méiyǒu gēn tā qù.	

Dāngmiàn means “face-to-face.” Literally, **dāng** means “in the presence of,” and **miàn** means “face.”

Notes on №3

3. A: **Bù zhīdào nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.**

不知道您有工夫沒有。

I don't know whether you have the time or not.

B: **Yǒu gōngfu.**

有功夫。

I have the time.

Gōngfu, “time,” “free time,” “leisure time,” refers to a period of time during which a person is free, in the sense that his work may be interrupted.

Now you know three words for “time”: **shíhou**, **shíjiān**, **gōngfu**. **Shíhou** may be used for either a point in time or an amount of time.

Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?

你什麼時候走？
When are you leaving?
Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?
坐火車要走多少時候？
How long does it take to go by train?

Shíjiān refers to any amount of time, including the time when a person is free.

Cóng zhèr dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān?
從這兒到飛機場要多少時間？
How long does it take from here to the airport?
Jīntiān měiyǒu shíjiān qù.
今天沒有時間去。
There isn't time to go today.

Gōngfu, however, is used only for amounts of time which a person has available for his own use.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu gōngfu gēn wǒ tán tán?
你有沒有功夫跟我談談？
Are you free to talk with me?

Notes on №4

4. A: **Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?**

什麼時候對您合適？

What time would suit you?

B: **Jīntiān, míngtiān dōu kěyǐ.**

今天，明天都可以。

Either today or tomorrow would be fine.

Dui, “to,” “towards,” “with regard to,” “with respect to,” is a prepositional verb which originally meant “facing.” In modern Chinese, its object introduces either the target of the action or the thing concerned. Contrast this with **gěi**, “for”: the object introduced by **gěi** receives the benefit of the action. These generalizations may help you sort out some of the differences between **dui** and **gěi**. You might find

it helpful to memorize some examples, as well.

- **dui** INTRODUCING THE TARGET OF THE ACTION (“to”)

Nǐde huà shì duì shéi shuōde?
To whom were you speaking?
你的話是對誰說的。
Tā duì wǒ hěn kèqì.

他對我很客氣。
He is very polite to me.
Nǐ duì wǒ tài hǎo.
你對我太好。
You are too good to me.

- **duì** INTRODUCING THE THING CONCERNED (“with regard to,” “with respect to”)

Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?
什麼時候對您合適？
What time suits you?
Shénme shíhou duì nín fāngbian?
什麼時候對您方便？
What time is convenient for you?

Notice that the English is “for you” in the last example, but in Chinese you must say “What time is convenient **with regard to** you?”

- **gěi** INTRODUCING THE BENEFICIARY

Wǒ gěi ta xiě le xìn le.
我給他寫了信了。
I wrote him a letter.
Zhè shì yìzhāng shíkuàide, qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huan.
這是一張十塊的，請您給我換換。
Here’s a ten-dollar bill. Please change it for me.
Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ xiě nǐ de dìzhǐ.
請你給我寫你的地址。
Would you write down your address for me, please?

Héshì is an adjectival verb meaning “to fit,” “to suit,” “to be suitable/appropriate.” When trying on clothes in a store, you might say **Zhèige bù héshì**, “This doesn’t fit.” In another situation, **héshì** could be translated very freely as “best”: **Něitiān duì nín héshì?** “What day would be best for you?”

Note on №5

Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāngbian yìdiǎn: **Bǐ** is a prepositional verb used to make comparisons between two things which are different. ¹In translating, you may find it helpful to think of **bǐ** as the English

¹A different pattern is used to say that two things are the same. (See MTG, Unit 3, notes on Nos. 4–5.)

“compared with” or “than.”² Notice that the **bǐ** phrase precedes the adjectival verb or another predicate in a sentence.

Sāndiǎn	bǐ	liǎngdiǎn	fāngbian yìdiǎnr.
三點	比	兩點	方便一點兒。
3 o'clock	than compared with	2 o'clock	more convenient.

“Three is more convenient than two.”

Tā	bǐ	wǒ	yǒu	gōngfu.
他	比	我	有	功夫。
he	than compared with	I	have	free time

“He has more free time than I do.”

The two elements being compared may be nouns, pronouns, verb phrases, or even full sentences. Actually, all elements joined by **bǐ** act as nouns, as seen in the English translations of the examples below.

Zuò fēijī	bǐ	zuò huǒchē	kuài.
坐飛機	比	坐火車	快。
ride plane	than compared with	ride train	fast.

“Going by plane is faster than going by train.”

Nǐ lái	bǐ	wǒ qù	fāngbian.
你來	比	我去	方便。
you come	than compared with	I go	convenient.

“It’s more convenient for you to come than for me to go.”

Notes on №6

6. B: Yīnwei wǒ yīhuǐr chūqu, yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn huíbulái.

因為我一會兒出去，也許兩點回不來。

Since I’m going out in a little while, I might not be able to get back by two.

Yīhuǐr, “a little while”: When **r** is added to a syllable ending in **i**, the pronunciation changes to /er/. **Yīhuǐr** is actually pronounced **yīhuěr**.

Sentence placement of time phrases: **Wǒ yīhuǐr chūqu** is translated as “I’m going out **IN** a little while.” Contrast this with **wǒ chūqu yīhuǐr**, “I’m going out **FOR** a little while.”

Let’s review the placement of different kinds of time expressions in a Chinese sentence.

If you want to say when something happens (“yesterday”) or in how long something happens (“in two years”), you are using time phrases which in Chinese are considered to be **POINTS IN TIME**.

Not only is a time phrase such as “two o’clock” a point in time, but a phrase such as “five days” can also be a point in time if the focus is on the end of this period of time.

²To say “A is not as ... as B,” you use a different construction, which you will learn in MTG, Unit 6, notes on No. 2.

In English, this focus is expressed by “in five days,” “by the end of five days,” or “at the end of five days.”

In Chinese, you do not need to use words such as “in,” “at,” or “by” because the position of the time phrase in the sentence indicates the meaning.

Time phrases which are considered points in time are placed BEFORE THE VERB.

- WHEN (a point in time)

Wǒ zuótiān kànjian ta le.
我昨天看見他了。
I saw him <u>yesterday</u> .
Wǒ cóngqián láiguò zhèlǐ.
我從前來過這裏。
I have been here <u>before</u> .
Wǒ liǎngdiǎn zhōng huí lái.
我兩點鐘回來。
I'll be back <u>at two o'clock</u> .
Wǒ yīdiǎn zhōng huí bù lái.
我一點鐘回不來。
I can't make it back <u>by one o'clock</u> .

- AT THE END OF/BY THE END OF (a period of time which is treated as a point in time because the focus is on the end point)

Wǒ sāntiān jiù zuò wán le.
我三天就做完了。
I finished doing it <u>in (by the end of) three days</u> .
Wǒ wǔfēn zhōng jiù zǒu.
我五分鐘就走。
I'm leaving <u>in (at the end of) five minutes</u> .
Nǐ jǐtiān huí lái?
你幾天回來？
<u>In (at the end of) how many days</u> will you come back?
ǐ duōjiǔ kěyǐ xiě wán?
你多久可以寫完？
<u>How long</u> will it be before you can finish writing it? (by the end of how long)

On the other hand, phrases which express CONTINUATION OF TIME have a different place in sentences. To express an amount of time which passes, put the time expression AFTER THE VERB.

- DURATION (the length of time something continues)

Wǒ xiǎng gēn tā tán yíhuǐr.
我想跟他談一會兒。
I would like to talk with him <u>for awhile</u> .
Tā zài Xiānggǎng zhùle yíge xīngqī.
他在香港住了一個星期。
She stayed in Hong Kong <u>for one week</u> .

- TIME SINCE (the length of time which has passed since something happened)

Tā sǐle sānnián le.
他死了三年了。
He died <u>three years ago</u> .
Wǒ zuòwánle yíge zhòngtóu le.
我做了一個鐘頭了。
It has been an <u>hour since</u> I finished.

Because *yíhuǐr* follows the verb in *wǒ chūqu yíhuǐr*, it indicates the length of time which will pass after I go out (*chūqu*). *Yíhuǐr* precedes the verb in *wǒ yíhuǐr chūqu*, indicating when I will go out (“in a little while”).

Yěxǔ literally means “perhaps.” The word is often used where “may” or “might” would be appropriate in English.

Yěxǔ liǎngdiān huíbulái, “I might not (be able to) get back by two”: Notice that this expression *liǎngdiān*, in time-when position, before the verb, means “by” a certain time. Other time phrases in this position may also mean “by” a certain time.

Huíbulái is another form of *huílái*, “to come back.” Compound verbs of result may be split by the negative *bu* or the syllable *de*. *Huílái* may become either *huídelái*, “can come back,” or *huíbulái*, “can’t come back.” These two forms are called the potential forms of the verb; that is, the meaning “can/ be able to” or “cannot/unable to” becomes part of the meaning of the compound. The following are examples of compound verbs of result and their potential forms.

huílái	回來	to come back
huídelái	回得來	able to come back
huíbulái	回不來	not able to come back
kànjian	看見	to see
kàndejiàn	看得見	able to see
kànbujiàn	看不見	not able to see
láidejí	來得及	able to make it on time

láibují ^a	來不及	not able to make it on time
zuòwán	做完	to finish doing
zuòdewán	做得完	able to finished doing, able to be completed
zuòbuwán	做不完	not able to finish doing, not able to be completed

^aThe verb *láideji/láibují* does not occur without the inserted *-de-* or *-bu-*.

Compound verbs of direction may also occur in the potential form:

nábushàngláí	拿不上來	can't carry up [to where you are] (i.e., because something is too heavy or bulky)
kāideshàngqu	開得上去	can drive up [away from you] (i.e., it is not too steep)
kāidechūláí	開得出來	can drive out (i.e., the parking place is not too tight)
nábuxiàláí	拿不下來	can't get [it] down (i.e., because it is too high, bolted on, etc.)
zǒudexiàqu	走得下去	can walk down (i.e., because it is not too far or too steep)

Notice that the last syllables of these compound verbs (except for toneless *qu*) have full tones when they occur with *-de-* and *-bu-*.

Notes on №7

7. B: *Nàme, wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng zài lóuxiàde huikèshì děng nín.*

那麼，我三點鐘在樓下的會客室等您。

Well then, I'll wait for you in the reception room downstairs at three o'clock.

A: *Hǎo, sāndiǎn jiàn.*

好，三點見。

Fine. I'll see you at three.

Word order: The first sentence of exchange 7 illustrates the rule TIME—PLACE—ACTION.

Huikèshì is also pronounced *huikèshǐ*.

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

8. *huídelái*

回得來

to be able to get back in time

9. *kòng(r)*

空兒

free time, spare time

10. *lóushàng*

樓上

upstairs

11. **shāngliang**
商量
to discuss, to talk over
12. **yǒu kòng(r)**
有空兒
to have free time

Here are some sentences illustrating the use of these vocabulary items:

Nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng huídelái huíbulái?
你三點鐘回得來回不來。
Can you make it back by three o'clock?
Lóushàng hái yǒu rén?
樓上還有人。
Are there still people upstairs?
Wǒ xiǎng hé nǐ shāngliang yíjiàn shì.
我想和你商量。
I would like to talk over a matter with you.
Nǐ jīntiān xiàwǔ yǒu kòngr ma?
你今天下午有空兒。
Do you have time this afternoon?

Drills

Substitution Drill

1. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟您当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.

Cue

Zhāng Kēzhǎng

张科长

Section Chief Zhāng

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟张科长当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Section Chief Zhāng about in person.

2. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟张科长当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with section chief Zhāng about in person.

Cue

tā

他/她

he/she

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn tā dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟他/她当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with him/her about in person.

3. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn tā dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟他当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with him/her about in person.

Cue

Wèi Wǔguān

魏武官

Officer Wei

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wèi Wǔguān tán tán.

我有点事想跟魏武官谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Officer Wei about in person.

4. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wèi Wǔguān dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟魏武官当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Officer Wei about in person.

Cue Wáng Shàoxiào
王少校
Major Wáng

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Shàoxiào dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟王少校当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Major Wáng about in person.

5. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Shàoxiào dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟王少校当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Major Wáng about in person.

Cue Lín Xiānsheng
林先生
Mr. Lín

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Lín Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟林先生当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Mr. Lín about in person.

6. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Lín Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟林先生当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Mr. Lín about in person.

Cue Liú Kēzhǎng
刘科长
section chief Liú

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Liú Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟刘科长当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with section chief Liú about in person.

7. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Liú Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟刘科长当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with section chief **Líu** about in person.

Cue

Hú tàitài

胡太太

Mrs. **Hú**

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Hú tàitài dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟胡太太当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Mrs. **Hú** about in person.

Transformation Drill

1. Nín míngtiān lái ma?

您明天来了吗？

Are you coming tomorrow?

Bù zhīdào nín míngtiān lái bu lái.

不知道您明天来不来。

I don't know whether you are coming tomorrow or not.

2. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she gone?

Bù zhīdào tā zǒu le meiyǒu.

不知道他/她走了没有。

I don't know whether he/she has gone or not.

2. Nín yǒu gōngfu ma?

您有功夫吗？

Do you have free time?

Bù zhīdào nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

不知道您有功夫没有。

I don't know whether you have free time or not.

3. Tā zuótiān qù le ma?

他/她昨天去了吗？

Did he/she go yesterday?

Bù zhīdào tā zuótiān qù le meiyǒu,

不知道他/她昨天去了没有。

I don't know whether he/she went yesterday.

4. Tā yǒu qián ma?

他/她有钱吗？

Does he/she have money?

Bù zhīdào tā yǒu qián meiyǒu.

不知道他/她有钱没有。

I don't know whether he/she have money or not.

5. Tā hái yào ma?

他/她还要吗？

Does he/she still want it?

Bù zhīdào tā hái yào bu yào.

不知道他/她还要不要。

I don't know whether he/she still wants it.

6. Tā mǎi le ma?

他/她买了吗？

Did he/she buy?

Bù zhīdào tā mǎi le meiyǒu.

不知道他/她买了没有。

I don't know whether he/she did buy or not.

Transformation Drill

Drill

1. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?
什么时候对您合适?
What time would suit you?

Cue sāndiǎn
三点
3 o'clock

Sāndiǎn duì nín héshì ma?
三点对您合适吗?
Would three o'clock suit you?

2. Xīngqījǐ duì nín héshì?
星期几对您合适?
What day of week would suit you?

Cue Xīngqīèr
星期二
Wednesday

Xīngqīèr duì nín héshì ma?
星期二对您合适吗?
Would Tuesday suit you?

3. Zài jǐlōu duì nín héshì?
在几楼对您合适?
Which floor would suit you?

Cue wǔlóu
五楼
fifth floor

Zài wǔlóu duì nín héshì ma?
在五楼对您合适吗?
Would the fifth floor suit you?

4. Nèitiān duì nín héshì?
对您合适？
What day would suit you?

Cue míngtiān
明天
tomorrow

Míngtiān duì nín héshì ma?
明天对您合适吗？
Would tomorrow suit you?

5. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?
什么时候对您合适？
What time would suit you?

Cue zǎoshang
早上
morning

Zǎoshang duì nín héshì ma?
早上对您合适吗？
Would in the morning suit you

6. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?
什么时候对您合适？
What time would suit you?

Cue wǎnshang
晚上
evening

Wǎnshang duì nín héshì ma?
晚上对您合适吗？
Would in the evening suit you?

7. Jǐdiǎn duì nín héshì?
几点对您合适？
What hour would suit you?

Cue

shídiǎn

十点

10 o'clock

Shídiǎn duì nín héshì ma?

十点对您合适吗？

Would 10 o'clock suit you?

Response Drill

1. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?

什么时候对您合适？

What time would suit you?

Cue

jīntiān

今天

today

Jīntiān, míngtiān dōu kényi.

今天，明天都可以。

Either today or tomorrow would be fine.

2. Jǐdiǎn duì nín héshì?

几点对您合适？

What hour would suit you?

Cue

sāndiǎn

三点

3 o'clock

Sāndiǎn, sìdiǎn dōu kényi.

三点，四点都可以。

Either 3 or 4 o'clock would be fine.

3. Xīngqījǐ duì nín héshì?

星期几对您合适？

What day of the week would suit you?

Cue

Xīngqīyī

星期一

Monday

Xīngqīyī, Xīngqīèr dōu kényi.

星期一，星期二都可以。

Either Monday or Tuesday would be fine.

4. Jǐhào duì nín héshì?

几号对您合适？

What date would suit you?

Cue

sihào

四号

the fourth

Sihào, wùhào dōu kényi.

四号，五号都可以。

Either the fourth or the fifth would be fine.

5. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?

什么时候对您合适？

What time would suit you?

Cue

shàngwǔ

上午

in the morning

Shàngwǔ, xiàwǔ dōu kényi.

上午，下午都可以。

Either in the morning or in the afternoon would be fine.

6. Něitiān duì nín héshì?

哪天对您合适？

What day would suit you?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Míngtiān, hòutiān dōu kényi.

明天，后天都可以。

Either tomorrow or the day after tomorrow would be fine.

7. Xīngqījǐ duì nín héshì?

星期几对您合适？

What day of the week would suit you?

Cue

Xīngqīliù

星期六
on Saturday

Xīngqīliù, Xīngqītiān dōu kěyǐ.

星期六星期天都可以。

Either on Saturday or on Sunday would be fine.

Transformation Drill

1. Shénme dìfang duì nín fāngbian?

什么地方对您方便？

What place would be convenient for you?

Cue

lóushàng

楼上

upstairs

lóushàng duì nín fāngbian, háishi lóuxià duì nín fāngbian?

楼上对您方便，还是楼下对您方便？

Would upstairs or downstairs be more convenient for you?

2. Shénme shíhou duì nín fāngbian?

什么时候对您方便？

What time would be convenient for you?

Cue

sāndiǎn

三点

3 o'clock

Sāndiǎn duì nín fāngbian, háishi sìdiǎn duì nín fāngbian?

三点候对您方便，还是四点候对您方便？

Would 3 o'clock or 4 o'clock be more convenient for you?

3. Jǐhào duì nín fāngbian?

几号

What date would be convenient for you?

Cue

liùhào

六号

the sixth

Liùhào duì nín fāngbian, háishi qīhào duì nín fāngbian?

六号六号对您方便，还是七号对您方便？

Would the sixth or the seventh be more convenient for you?

4. Něitiān duì nín fāngbian?

对您方便？

Which day would be convenient for you?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Míngtiān duì nín fāngbian, háishi hòutiān duì nín fāngbian?

明天对您方便，还是后天对您方便？

Would tomorrow or the day after tomorrow be more convenient for you?

5. Shénme shíhou duì nín fāngbian?

对您方便？

What time would be convenient for you?

Cue

shàngwǔ

上午

morning

Shàngwǔ duì nín fāngbian, háishi xiàwǔ duì nín fāngbian?

上午对您方便，还是下午对您方便？

Would be in the morning or in the afternoon more convenient for you?

6. Xīngqījǐ duì nín fāngbian?

对您方便？

What day of week would be convenient for you?

Cue

Xīngqīsān

星期三

Wednesday

Xīngqīsān duì nín fāngbian, háishi Xīngqīsì duì nín fāngbian?

星期三对您方便，还是星期四对您方便？

Would Wednesday or Thursday be more convenient for you?

7. Jǐdiǎn duì nín fāngbian?

对您方便？

What day would be convenient for you?

Cue

jǐudiǎn

九点

6 o'clock

Jiǔdiǎn duì nín fāngbian, háishi shídiǎn duì nín fāngbian?

九点对您方便，还是十点对您方便？

Would be 6 o'clock or 7 o'clock more convenient for you?

Expansion Drill

1. Sāndiǎn fāngbian yídiǎn.

三点方便一点。

Three o'clock is a little more convenient.

Cue

sìdiǎn

四点

4 o'clock

Sāndiǎn bǐ sìdiǎn fāngbian yídiǎn.

三点比四点方便一点。

Three o'clock is a little more convenient than four o'clock.

2. Sānhào fāngbian yídiǎn.

三号方便一点。

He/she third is a little more convenient.

Cue

wǔhào

五号

number 5

Sānhào bǐ wǔhào fāngbian yídiǎn.

三号比五号方便一点。

He/she third is a little more convenient than he/she fifth.

3. Lóushàng fāngbian yídiǎn.

楼上方便一点。

Upstairs is a little more convenient.

Cue

lóuxià

楼下

downstairs

Lóushàng bǐ lóuxià fāngbian yídiǎn.

楼上比楼下方便一点。

Upstairs is a little more convenient than downstairs.

4. Tāde qián duō yídiǎn.

他/她的钱多一点。

He/she has a little more money.

Cue

wǒde

我的

mine/my

Tāde qián bǐ wǒde duō yidiǎn.

他/她的钱比我的多一点。

He/she has a little more money than me.

5.

Tā qù hǎo yidiǎn.

他/她去好一点。

He/she went a bit better.

Cue

wǒ

我

I

Tā qù bǐ wǒ qù hǎo yidiǎn.

他/她去比我去好一点。

He/she went a bit better than me.

6.

Tā dà yidiǎn.

他/她大一点。

He/she is a bit older.

Cue

wǒ

我

I

Tā bǐ wǒ dà yidiǎn.

他/她比我大一点。

He/she is a bit older than me.

7.

Zhèige dà yidiǎn.

这个大一点。

This one is a bit bigger.

Cue

nèige

那个

that

Zhèige bǐ nèige dà yídiǎn.

这个比那个大一点。

This one is a bit bigger than that one.

Expansion Drill

1. Tā shuōde kuài yidiǎn.

他/她说得快一点。

He/she speaks a little fast.

Tā shuōde bǐ wǒ kuài yidiǎn

他/她说得比我快一点。

He/she speaks a little faster than I do.

2. Tā láide zǎo yidiǎn.

他/她来得早一点。

He/she came a bit earlier.

Tā láide bǐ wǒ zǎo yidiǎn.

他/她来得比我早一点。

He/she came a bit earlier than me.

3. Tā zǒude wǎn yidiǎn.

他/她走得晚一点。

He/she leaves a little later.

Tā zǒude bǐ wǒ wǎn yidiǎn.

他/她走得比我晚一点。

He/she leaves a little later than me.

4. Tā zuòde hǎo yidiǎn.

他/她做得好一点。

He/she does a little better.

Tā zuòde bǐ wǒ hǎo yidiǎn.

他/她做得比我好一点。

He/she does a little better than me.

5. Tā mǎide shǎo yidiǎn.

他/她买得少一点。

He/she buys a little less.

Tā mǎide bǐ wǒ shǎo yidiǎn.

他/她卖得比我少一点。

He/she buys a little less than me.

6. Tā mǎide duō yídiǎn.

他/她卖得多一点。

He/she sells a little more.

Tā mǎide bǐ wǒ duō yídiǎn.

他/她卖得比我多一点。

He/she sells a little more than me.

7. Tā xuéde màn yídiǎn.

他/她学得慢一点。

He/she studies a little slower.

Tā xuéde bǐ wǒ màn yídiǎn.

他/她学得比我慢一点。

He/she studies a little slower than me.

Response Drill

1. Nǐ shénme shíhou chūqu?

你什么时候出去？

What time are you going out?

Wǒ yīhuǐr jiù chūqu.

我有一会儿就出去。

I'm going out in Just a little while.

2. Nǐ chūqu duó jiǔ?

你出去多久。

For how long are you going out?

Wǒ jiù chūqu yīhuǐr.

我就出去一会儿。

I'm Just going out for a little while

3. Nǐ shénme shíhou chūlai?

你什么时候出来？

What time are you coming out?

Wǒ yīhuǐr jiù chūlai.

我一会儿就出来。

I'll be out in a moment.

4. Nǐ qù duó jiǔ?

你去多久？

How long are you going?

Wǒ jiù qù yīhuǐr.

我就去一会儿。

I'll just go for a while.

5. Tā shénme shíhou lái?

他/她什么时候来？

What time does he/she come?

Tā yīhuǐr jiù lái.

他/她一会儿就去。

He/she will be there later

6. Tā kàn duó jiǔ?

他/她看多久？

How long does he/she look at it?

Tā jiù kàn yīhuǐr.

他/她就看一会儿。

He/she just watches for a while.

7. Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?

你什么时候走？

What time are you leaving?

Wǒ yīhuǐr jiù zǒu.

我一会儿就走。

I'll leave in a while.

Response Drill

1. Zhāng Xiānsheng míngtiān huídelái huíbulái?

张先生明天回得来回不来？

Will Mr. Zhāng be able to come back tomorrow?

Zhāng Xiānsheng hòutiān cái huílai.

张先生后天才回来。

Mr. Zhāng won't be able to come back until day after tomorrow.

2. Wáng Nǚshì Xīngqīsi huídelái huíbulái?

王女士星期四回得来回不来？

Will Wáng's wife be able to come back on Thursday?

Wáng Nǚshì Xīngqīwǔ cái huílai.

才回来。

Wáng's wife won't be able to come back before Friday.

3. Lǐ Tóngzhì shíyīdiǎn huídelái huíbulái?

李同志十一点回得来回不来？

Will comrade Lǐ be able to come back at 11 o'clock?

Lǐ Tóngzhì shíèrdiǎn cái huílai.

李同志十二点才回来。

Comrade Lǐ won't be able to come back before 12 o'clock.

4. Lín Kēzhǎng èrshíhào huídelái huíbulái?

林科长二十号回得来回不来？

Will Section Chief Lín be able to come back the 20th?

Lín Kēzhǎng èrshíyīhào cái huílai.

林科长二十一号才回来。

Section Chief Lín will not return until the 21st.

5. Wèi Shàoxiào zhègè yuè huídelái huíbulái?

魏少校这个月回得来回不来？

Will Major Wèi be able to come back this month?

Wèi Shàoxiào xiàgè yuè cái huílai.

魏少校下个月才回来。

Major Wei won't be back until next month.

6. Yáng Xiānsheng zǎoshang huídelái huíbulái?

杨先生早上回得来回来？

Will Mr. Yáng be able to come back this morning?

Yáng Xiānsheng wǎnshang cái huílai.

杨先生晚上才回来。

Mr. Yáng will not be able to come back before this evening.

7. Zhào Tóngzhì jīntiān huídelái huíbulái?

赵同志今天回得来回来？

Will Comrade Zhào be able to come back today?

Zhào Tóngzhì míngtiān cái huílai.

赵同志明天才回来。

Comrade Zhào will not be able to come back until tomorrow.

Expansion Drill

1. Nàme, wǒ zài zhèr dēng nín.

那么，我在这儿等您。

In that case, I'll wait for you here.

Cue in a moment

Nàme, wǒ yīhuǐr zài zhèr dēng nín.

那么，我一会儿在这儿等您。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for you here.

2. Nàme, wǒ zài lóuxià dēng ta.

那么，我在楼下等他/她。

In that case, I'll wait for him/her downstairs.

Cue for a moment

Nàme, wǒ zài lóuxià dēng ta yīhuǐr.

那么，我在楼下等他/她一会儿。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for him/her downstairs.

3. Nàme, wǒ zài lóushàng dēng ta.

那么，我在楼上等他/她。

In that case, I'll wait for him/her upstairs.

Cue at one o'clock

Nàme, wǒ yìdiǎn zhōng zài lóushàng dēng ta.

那么，我在楼上等他/她。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for him/her upstairs.

4. Nàme, wǒ zài tā nàr dēng nín.

那么，我在他/她那儿等您。

In that case, I'll wait for him/her at his place.

Cue for ten minutes

Nàme, wǒ zài tā nàr dēng nín shífēn zhōng.

那么，我在他/她那儿等您十分钟。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for him/her at his place.

5. *Nàme, wǒ zài tā jiā děng nín.*

那么，我在他/她家等您。

In that case, I'll wait for you at his home.

Cue in a moment

Nàme, wǒ yīhuǐr zài tā jiā děng nín.

那么，我一会儿在他/她家等您。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for you at his home.

6. *Nàme, wǒ zài xiǎomàibù děng nín.*

那么，我在小卖部等您。

In that case, I'll wait for you in the variety shop.

Cue for five minutes

Nàme, wǒ zài xiǎomàibù děng nín wǔfēn zhōng.

那么，我在小卖部等您五分钟。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for you in the variety shop.

7. *Nàme, wǒ zài zhèr děng ta.*

那么，我在这儿等他/她。

In that case, I'll wait for him/her here.

Cue for a moment

Nàme, wǒ zài zhèr děng ta yīhuǐr.

那么，我在这儿等他/她一会儿。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for him/her here.

Unit 2

References

Reference List

1. C: **Wèi, Měidàsī.**
喂，美大司。
Hello. Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.
A: **Wǒ shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎnde Qiáozhì Dáfēi. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Kēzhǎng jiǎngyìjiāng.**
我是加拿大大使館的喬治達菲。我有一件事想跟王科長講一講。
I am George Duffy of the Canadian Embassy. I have something I would like to discuss with Section Chief **Wáng**.
2. C: **Òu, tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.**
哦，她現在開會。
Oh, she is at a meeting now.
C: **Děng tā kāiwán huì wǒ gào sòng tā gěi nǐ huí diànhuà.**
等她外晚會我告誦她給你回電話。
When she is finished with the meeting, I will tell her to return your call.
3. A: **Hǎo, xièxiè nǐ.**
好，謝謝你，
Fine. Thank you.
C: **Bú xiè.**
不謝。
Don't mention it.
4. B: **Duìbuqǐ, jīntiān zǎoshang nǐ dǎ diànhuà lái de shíhou wǒ zài kāi huì, méi shíjiān gēn nǐ shuō huà.**
對不起，今天早上你打電話來的時候我在開會，沒時間跟你說話。
I'm sorry. When you called here this morning, I was in a meeting and didn't have time to speak with you.
A: **Méi guānxi. Wǒ zhīdào nǐ hěn máng.**
沒關係。我知道你很忙。
It doesn't matter. I know you are very busy.
5. A: **Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.**
我給你打電話目的是想跟你當面談談。

- The reason I called you is that I would like to talk with you in person.
- B: Hǎo a. Shénme shíhou a?
好啊。什麼時候啊？
All right. When?
6. A: Míngtiān duì nǐ héshì ma?
明天對你合適嗎？
Would tomorrow be all right for you?
- B: Míngtiān xiàwǔ shénme shíhou dōu kěyǐ.
明天下午什麼時候都可以，
Any time tomorrow afternoon would be fine.
7. A: Zài nǎr jiàn ne?
在哪兒見呢？
Where shall we meet?
- B: Liǎngdiǎn zhōng qǐng nǐ dào wǒ zhèr lái, xíng bu xíng?
兩點鐘請你到我這兒，行不行？
Please come over here at two o'clock. All right?
- A: Hǎo. Míngtiān liǎngdiǎn zhōng jiàn.
好。明天兩點鐘見。
Okay. See you tomorrow at two o'clock.

Additional Required Vocabulary

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8. guānxi
關係
relation, relationship, connection
9. jiǎng huà
講話
to speak, to talk; a speech
10. lǐngshìguǎn
領事館
consulate
11. shìqing (yíjiàn)
事情 (一件)
matter, business, affair
12. sīzhǎng
司長
department chief
13. yǒu guānxi
有關係
to relate to, to have a bearing on, to matter

Vocabulary

bú xiè	不謝	don't mention it
dàshiguǎn	大使館	embassy
diànhuà	電話	telephone, phone call
guānxi	關係	relation, relationship, connection
-jiàn	件	(counter for matters, business, affairs)
jiǎng	講	to discuss (something), to talk about (something)
jiǎng huà	講話	to speak, to talk; a speech
kāi huì	開會	to attend a meeting
kāiwán huì	開完會	to finish a meeting
língshiguǎn	領事館	consulate
Měidàsī	美大司	Department of American and Oceanic Affairs
méi guānxi	沒關係	it doesn't matter
mùdì	目的	reason, objective, purpose
shì (yíjiàn)	事 (意見)	matter, business, affair
shìqing (yíjiàn)	事情 (意見)	matter, business, affair
shuō huà	說話	to speak
sīzhǎng	司長	department chief
yǒu guānxi	有關係	to relate, to have a bearing on, to matter
zài	在	in the midst of (marker of ongoing action)
(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)		
chī	吃	to eat
dàxuéshēng	大學生	college student
diànhuà hàomǎ	電話號碼	telephone number
dù jià	度假	to spend one's vacation
hòulái	後來	later
láodòng	勞動	to do manual labor
Qíngbàosī	情報司	Intelligence Bureau (part of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, PRC)
shēnghuó	生活	life
tóngyì	同意	to agree

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. C: Wèi, Měidàsī.
喂，美大司。
Hello. Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.
- A: Wǒ shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎnde Qiáozhì Dáféi. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Kēzhǎng jiǎngyíjiàng.
我是加拿大大使館的喬治達菲。我有一件事想跟王科長講一講。
I am George Duffy of the Canadian Embassy. I have something I would like to discuss with Section Chief Wáng.

Měidàsī: In Chinese, abbreviations are made up of one syllable from each word in a term. In **Měidàsī**, **měi** stands for **Měizhōu** (美洲), “American continent.” **Dà** stands for **Dà yáng zhōu** (大洋洲), “Oceania” (the islands of the South Central Pacific, including Australia and New Zealand). The ending **sī** means “department.” It is used only within organizations on the national level.

Dàshìguǎn: The word **guǎn** means “building” or “establishment,” as in **fànguǎn**, an establishment where food is sold. The examples below illustrate the use of **guǎn**.

dàshǐ	大使	ambassador
dàshìguǎn	大使館	embassy
lǐngshì	領事	consul
lǐngshìguǎn	領事館	consulate
zhǎnlǎn	展覽	exhibit
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	展覽館	exhibition hall

Notice that the **shǐ** in **dàshǐguǎn** and the **shì** in **lǐngshìguǎn** lose their tones.

Yíjiàn shì: The counter **-jiàn** in this expression is also the counter for luggage. **Yíjiàn shì** literally means “a piece of business.”

Jiǎng and **jiǎng huà:** The English word “speak,” meaning the activity in general, must be translated into Chinese with a verb and its GENERAL OBJECT: **jiǎng huà**. In other uses, the verb “to speak,” **jiǎng**, may be followed by a specific object or a phrase showing duration, or it may be changed into a multisyllabic verb, such as **jiǎngyíjiàng**. Other verbs which are used the same way are **shuō huà**, **xiě zì**, and **niàn shū**.

Tā zài jiǎng Zhōngguóde shìqing.
他在講中國的事情。
He is talking about Chinese affairs.
Tā yǐjīng jiǎngle bù shǎo.
他已經講了不少。

He has already said a lot.
Tāde jiǎng huà hěn yǒu yìsi.
他的講話很有意思。
His talk was very interesting.

Jiǎng is not used to say that someone said something. Instead, shuō is used.

Tā shuō tā bù néng lái.
他說他不能來。
He said he could not come.

Notes on №2

2. C: Òu, tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.
 哦，她現在開會。
 Oh, she is at a meeting now.
- C: Děng tā kāiwán huì wǒ gào sòng tā gěi nǐ huí diànhuà.
 等她外晚會我告訴她給你回電話。
 When she is finished with the meeting, I will tell her to return your call.

Zài is the aspect marker for ongoing actions. It indicates that the action is in progress. The corresponding verb in the English translation usually ends in -ing. Zài is used only with verbs which express actual dynamic action. State and process verbs may not be used with zài. Many action verbs may be used with zài, but some do not have enough “action” to be used (e.g., “sitting”).

Tā lái de shíhòu, nǐ zài niàn shū.
他來的時候，你在念書。
When he came, you were studying,
Tāmen zài kàn diànyǐng.
他們在看電影。
They are watching a movie.
Tāmen zài hē kāfēi.
他們在喝咖啡。
They are drinking coffee.
Tāmen zài shàng kè.
他們在上課。
They are having class.

Zài is placed in front of the verb, unlike other aspect markers, such as le, guo, and de.

To make ongoing-action sentences negative, use bù. To form a question with zài, use shì bu shì zài, zài...ma, or zài bu zài.

Xuésheng zài shàng kè ma?
學生在上課嗎？
Are the students having class?
Tāmen bú zài shàng kè, yǐjīng zǒu le.
他們不在上課，已經走了。
They are not having class. They have already left.
Tā lái de shíhòu, nǐ shì bu shì zài niàn shū?
他來的時候，你是不是在念書？
Weren't you studying when he came over?
Bù, bú zài niàn shū, yǐjīng wánr qu le.
不，不在念書，已經玩兒去了。
No, I wasn't studying. I had already gone out to play.
Tā zài bu zài kàn diànshì?
他在不在看電視？
Is he watching television?

The aspect marker *zài* and the aspect marker *ne* often occur in the same sentence, indicating absence of change.

Tā zài kàn bào ne.
她在看報呢。
She is reading the paper.

Sometimes *ne* is used without *zài*.

Tā kàn bào ne.
她看報呢。
She is reading the paper.

Děng, literally “to wait”: In the second sentence of No. 2, the verb *děng* is used at the beginning of a phrase to mean “when.” *Děng* may be used with *de shíhòu*, “when,” in the same phrase. Often, the second part of a sentence beginning with *děng* will contain an adverb meaning “then”—*jiù*, *zài*, or *cái*.

Děng nǐ kànwán bàozhǐ, wǒmen chūqu mǎi cài.
等你看完報紙，我們出去買菜。
When you have finished the paper, we will go out to buy groceries.
Xué Yīngwén nán bu nán?
學英文難不難？
Is it hard to learn English?

Děng nǐ xuéde shíhou jiù zhīdao le.
等你學的時候就知道了。
When you study it, then you'll know.
Nǐ bú shì yǒu yíjiàn shì yào gàosong wǒ ma?
你不是有一件事要告訴我嗎？
Don't you have something you want to tell me?
Děng chīwán fàn zài shuō.
等吃完飯再說。
Wait until we finish eating; then we'll talk about it.

The translation of **děng** as “wait until,” in the last example above, might suggest that the word is used only in future contexts. But **děng** is also used in past contexts:

Zuótiān tā méiyǒu hé nǐ yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng ma?
昨天他沒有和你一起去看電影嗎？
Didn't he go out with you to a movie last night?
Méiyǒu. Děng tā huílaide shíhou dōu shíyīdiǎn le.
沒有。等他回來的時候都十一點了。
No. It was already eleven o'clock when he got home.
Zuótiān tā bādiǎn zhōng cái huí jiā. Děng tā huí jiā wǒmen cái zuò fàn, nǐ xiǎng jǐdiǎn cái chī fàn!
昨天他八點鐘才回家。等他回家我們才做飯，你想幾點才吃飯！
Yesterday he didn't get home until eight o'clock. We didn't fix dinner until he got home; so imagine what time it was when we ate!

Kāi huì, “to meet,” “to hold a meeting,” is an example of a verb and its general object.

Kāiwán, “finish holding [the meeting]”: **Wán** is the verb “to finish.” It is used as an ending in a compound verb of result in No. 2.³* **Wán** expresses the idea of “over,” “up,” as in “Class is over,” “All the paper has been used up.”

But be careful: **wán** is not used as a main verb when an object follows the verb. Instead of saying “finish this,” using **wán** by itself, you would say **bǎ zhèige chīwán**, “finish eating this”; **bǎ zhèige zuòwán**, “finish doing this”; or **bǎ zhèige kànwán**, “finish reading this.”

Wán may sometimes be used as a main verb when there is no object, as in **Diànyǐng wán le**, “The movie is finished.” But far more often **wán** occurs as an ending which indicates result.

Diànhuà (literally, “electric speech”) may mean either “telephone” or “telephone call.”

Huí diànhuà, “to return a phone call,” “to call back”: you have learned the verb **huí**, “to return,” as in **Nǐ shenme shíhou huíqu?** “When are you going back?” In No. 2, **huí** takes a direct object, **diànhuà**. Compare **huí diànhuà** with **dǎ diànhuà**, “to make a phone call,” which is found in exchange 4.

³You have already seen **wán** in **Piào dōu màiwán le**.

Gěi ni huí diànhuà, “call you ’back”: you have learned the prepositional verb **gěi**, meaning “for [the benefit of].” In **gěi ni huí diànhuà**, **gěi** is translated as “to.” Because there are two meanings for **gěi**, occasionally a sentence may be ambiguous. For example, **Wǒ gěi ta jìqù liǎngbāo cháyè** means either “I sent two packages of tea to him” or “I mailed out two packages of tea for him.”

Dui is also translated as “to.” **Dui** introduces the target; **gěi** introduces the receiver. In other words, **dui** expresses the intended direction but does not necessarily imply that the target is reached. **Gěi** usually implies receiving, as you might expect, since it means “give” as a full verb.

You use **gěi** to indicate the receiver when you say:

gěi ta dǎ diànhuà
給她打電話
telephone her
gěi ta xiě yìfēng xìn
給她寫一封信
write her a letter
gěi ta mǎi le yìge fángzi
給她買了一個房子
bought her a house

But, to indicate the target, you say:

duì ta hǎo
給她好
be nice to her
duì ta kèqì
對他客氣
be polite to him
duì ta shēngqì
對她生氣
get angry at her

Notice that **dui** is used especially to indicate the target of feelings and attitudes, while **gěi** is used with actions such as calling, mailing, and sending.

Notes on №3

3. A: **Hǎo, xièxie nǐ.**
好，謝謝你，
Fine. Thank you.
- C: **Bú xiè.**

不謝。

Don't mention it.

Bú xiè is an idiom meaning something like “don't thank [me].”

(Literally, “Don't thank me” would be **Bié xiè wǒ** (別謝我).)

Notes on №4

4. B: **Duibuqǐ, jīntiān zǎoshang nǐ dǎ diànhuà laide shíhou wǒ zài kāi huì, méi shíjiān gēn nǐ shuō huà.**
 對不起，今天早上你打電話來的時候我在開會，沒時間跟你說話。
 I'm sorry. When you called here this morning, I was in a meeting and didn't have time to speak with you.
- A: **Méi guānxi. Wǒ zhīdào nǐ hěn máng.**
 沒關係。我知道你很忙。
 It doesn't matter. I know you are very busy.

Dǎ diànhuà means “to make a phone call.” (Literally, **dǎ** means “to hit.”)

Wǒ zuótiān wǎnshang gěi Mǎ Tàitai dǎle yige diànhuà.
我昨天晚上給馬太太打了一個電話。
I called Mrs. Mǎ last night.
Wǒ dǎ liǎnge diànhuà jiù lái.
我打兩個電話就來。
I'll be right there after I make a couple of phone calls.

Shuō huà, “to speak,” is a verb with a general object—literally, “speak words.” Verb + general object is often translated into English by a verb alone: **niàn shū**, “to study”; **kāi chē**, “to drive.”

Méi guānxi: Other translations for this very useful expression are “that's okay,” “don't worry about it,” “it doesn't make any difference.”

Literally, **méi guānxi** would be translated as “there isn't any connection.”

Notes on №5

5. A: **Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.**
 我給你打電話目的是想跟你當面談談。
 The reason I called you is that I would like to talk with you in person.
- B: **Hǎo a. Shénme shíhou a?**
 好啊。什麼時候啊？
 All right. When?

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì...: In English, the word “reason,” or “purpose,” begins the phrase, with the modifying clause following. In Chinese, everything modifying “the purpose” precedes **mùdì**.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà -de mùdì shì

The reason why I called you is

Mùdì, “purpose,” “aim,” “objective”: Although translated idiomatically as “reason” in exchange 5, mùdì does not really mean “reason”/“cause.” The English terms should be translated as yuányīn: wǒ lái wǎn de yuányīn, “the reason I came late” (我來晚的原因).

Notes on №6

6. A: Míngtiān duì nǐ héshì ma?
 明天對你合適嗎？
 Would tomorrow be all right for you?
- B: Míngtiān xiàwǔ shénme shíhòu dōu kěyǐ.
 明天下午什麼時候都可以，
 Any time tomorrow afternoon would be fine.

Shénme shíhòu dōu kěyǐ, “anytime is okay” (more literally, “what[ever] time, all is okay”), illustrates a pattern for expressing the idea of “any” in Chinese: a question word, such as shéi, shénme, nǎr, and nǎitiān, followed by dōu, “all.”

Shéi dōu néng qù.
誰都能去。
Anyone can go.
Nǎr dōu kěyǐ.
哪兒都可以。
Anyplace will do.
Shénme dōu kěyǐ.
什麼都可以。
Anything will do.
Něitiān dōu hǎo.
哪天都好
Any day is good.
Zěnmé zuò dōu hǎo.
怎麼做都好。
Any way (you) do it is fine.

The ideas of “nobody,” “nowhere,” “nothing,” and “none” are expressed by adding bù or méi after dōu in the pattern above.

Shéi dōu bú yào zǒu.
誰都能不要走。

Nobody wants to leave.
Nǎr dōu bú duì.
哪兒都不對。
No place is right.
Zěnmē dōu bù xíng.
怎麼都不行。
No way will do.
Shénme dōu méiyǒu.
什麼都沒有。
There is nothing.

The “any/no” expression need not be the subject of a sentence; it may also be the object. Even if the expression is the direct object, it must precede the verb.

Tā shéi dōu xǐhuan.
他誰都喜歡。
He likes anyone/everyone.
Wǒ nǎr dōu bú qù.
我哪兒都不去。
I won't go anywhere.
Nèige shāngdiàn shénme dōu mài.
那個商店什麼都賣。
That store sells everything,
Tā nǎige dōu bù xǐhuan.
他哪個都不喜歡。
He doesn't like either/any of them.

(As objects, many of these expressions must be translated as “every....”)

An “any/no” expression may also be the object of a prepositional verb.

Wǒ gēn shéi dōu méi shuō huà.
我跟誰都沒說話。
I didn't speak with anyone.

Notes on №7

7. A: Zài nǎr jiàn ne?

在哪兒見呢？

Where shall we meet?

B: Liǎngdiǎn zhōng qǐng nǐ dào wǒ zhèr lái, xíng bu xíng?

兩點鐘請你到我這兒，行不行？

Please come over here at two o'clock. All right?

A: Hǎo. Míngtiān liǎngdiǎn zhōng jiàn.

好。明天兩點鐘見。

Okay. See you tomorrow at two o'clock.

Dào wǒ zhèr lái means, literally, “come over to the place where I am.” While plurals such as wǒmen zhèr and nǐmen nàr often refer to institutions, the singular wǒ zhèr, nǐ nàr, and tā nàr usually refer to any place where a person might be. In an office shared by two people, for instance, you could say Wǒ zhèr méiyǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn; nǐ nàr yǒu méiyǒu? “I don’t have an English-Chinese dictionary over here; do you have one over there?”

Dào, like zài, is a verb which requires a place word as its object. Sentences like “Come over here to me” and “Go over there to Mr. Wáng” must be translated as Dào wǒ zhèr lái and Dào Wáng Xiānsheng nàr qù. Zhèr and nàr make wǒ and Wáng Xiānsheng parts of place-word phrases.

Vocabulary booster

8. guānxi
關係
relation, relationship, connection
9. jiǎng huà
講話
to speak, to talk; a speech
10. lǐngshìguǎn
領事館
consulate
11. shìqing (yíjiàn)
事情 (一件)
matter, business, affair
12. sīzhǎng
司長
department chief
13. yǒu guānxi
有關係
to relate to, to have a bearing on, to matter

Yǒu guānxi: To talk about the relationship of two things, use ...gēn...yǒu guānxi or ...hé...yǒu guānxi.

Lǐngshìguǎn hé dàshìguǎn yǒu shénmeyàngde guānxi?

領事館和大使館有什麼樣的關係？

What is the relationship between the consulate and the embassy?

Vocabulary Booster

Occupations

accountant
會計師
kuàijìshī
actor, actress
演員
yǎnyuán
architect
建築師
jiànzhùshī
athlete
運動員
yùndòngyuán
author, writer
作家
zuòjiā
barber
理髮師,
lǐfāshī, lǐfāde
blue-collar worker
工人
gōngrén
builder
營造商
yíngzàoshāng
businessman
商人
shāngrén

carpenter
木匠, 木工
mùjiang, mùgōng
chemical engineer
化學工程師
huàxué gōngchéngshī
civil engineer
土木工程師
tǔmù gōngchéngshī
civil servant
公務員
gōngwùyuán
composer
作曲家
zuòqǔjiā
cook
廚師
chúshī
customs official
海關官員
hǎiguān guānyuán
diplomat
外交官
wàijiāoguān
doctor
大夫, 醫生
dàifu, yīshēng
(newspaper) editor
編輯
biānji

electrical engineer
電機工程師
diànjī gōngchéngshī
electrician
電工
diàngōng
employee, clerk, attendant
服務員
fúwùyuán
farmer, peasant
農民
nóngmín
fisherman
漁民
yúmín
gardener
園丁，花匠
yuándīng, huājiàng
governess
保姆
bǎomǔ
government minister
部長
bùzhǎng
housewife
家庭主婦，急停婦女
jiāting zhǔfù, jíting fùnǚ
lawyer
律師

lùshī
manager
經理
jīnglǐ
mayor
市長
shìzhǎng
mechanic
機械師，機械員
jīxièshī, jīxièyuán
mechanical engineer
機械工程師
jīxiè gōngchéngshī
movie star
電影明星
diànyǐng míngxīng
musician
音樂家
yīnyuèjiā
nuclear engineer
盒子工程師
hézi gōngchéngshī
nurse
護士
hùshi
office staff worker
職員
zhíyuán
(Chinese) opera performer

京劇演員
jīngjù yǎnyuán
painter (artist)
畫家
huàjiā
pharmacist
藥劑師
yàojìshī
pilot
飛行員
fēixíngyuán
policeman
警察
jǐngchá
postman
郵遞員
yóudìyuán
professor
教授
jiàoshòu
reporter
記者
jìzhě
sailor
海員，水手，船員
hǎiyuán, shuǐshǒu, chuányuán
salesman
推銷員
tuīxiāoyuán

secretary
秘書
mishū
servant
用人
yòngren
shoemaker
鞋匠師傅
xiéjiàngshīfu
shoe repairman
修鞋的
xiūxiéde
store clerk, salesperson
售貨員
shòuhuòyuán
teacher
教員
jiàoyuán
typist
打字員
dǎzìyuán
(star) vocalist
歌星
gēxīng
waiter, waitress
飯店服務員
fàndiàn fúwùyuán

Drills

Substitution Drill

1. Tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.
他/她现在在开会。
He/she is at a meeting now

Cue dǎ diànhuà
打电话
make a phone call

Tā xiànzài zài dǎ diànhuà.
他/她现在在打电话。
He/she is making a phone call now.

2. Tā xiànzài zài dǎ diànhuà.
他/她现在在打电话。
He/she is making a phone call now.

Cue děng nǐ
等你
wait for you

Tā xiànzài zài děng nǐ.
他/她现在在等你
He/she is waiting for you now.

3. Tā xiànzài zài děng nǐ.
他/她现在在等你。
He/she is waiting for you now.

Cue gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō huà
跟王先生说话。
talk with Mr. Wáng

Tā xiànzài zài gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō huà.
他/她现在在跟王先生说话。

He/she is speaking with Mr. Wáng now.

4. Tā xiànzài zài gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō huà.

他/她现在在跟王先生说话。

He/she is speaking with Mr. Wáng now.

Cue gōngzuò
工作
work

Tā xiànzài zài gōngzuò.

他/她现在在工作。

He/she is at work now.

5. Tā xiànzài zài gōngzuò.

他/她现在在工作。

He/she is at work now.

Cue jiǎng huà
讲话
do a speech

Tā xiànzài zài jiǎng huà.

他/她现在在讲话。

He/she is speaking now.

6. Tā xiànzài zài jiǎng huà.

他/她现在在讲话。

He/she is speaking now.

Cue huàn qián
换钱
change money

Tā xiànzài zài huàn qián.

他/她现在在换钱。

He/she is changing money now.

7. Tā xiànzài zài huàn qián.

他/她现在在换钱。

He/she is changing money now.

Cue

mǎi dōngxī.

买东西

shopping

Tā xiànzài mǎi dōngxī.

他/她现在买东西.

He/she is shopping now.

Response Drill

1. Tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.
他现在在开会。
He is at a meeting now.

Cue yìhuìr
一会儿
In a little while

Yìhuìr qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?
一会儿请他给我回个电话，好不好？
In a little while please ask him to call me back. All right?

2. Wáng Tóngzhì xiànzài zài jiǎng huà.
王同志现在在讲话。
Comrade Wáng is speaking now.

Cue xiàwǔ
下午
afternoon

Xiàwǔ qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?
下午请他给我回个电话，好不好？
This afternoon please ask him to call me back. All right?

3. Zhāng Tóngzhì xiànzài zài xué Zhōngguó huà.
张同志现在在学中国话。
Comrade Wáng is learning Chinese now.

Cue shàngwǔ
上午
morning

Shàngwǔ qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?
上午请他给我回个电话，好不好？
In the morning please ask him to call me back. All right?

4. Mǎ Kēzhǎng xiànzài zài dǎ diànhuà.

马科长现在在打电话。

Section Chief **Mǎ** is making a phone call now.

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Míngtiān qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?

明天请他给我回个电话，好不好？

Tomorrow please ask him to call me back. All right?

5.

Wáng Tóngzhì xiànzài zài gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng jiǎnghuà.

王同志现在在跟张科长讲话。

Comrade **Wáng** is talking to Section Chief **Zhāng** now.

Cue

yíhuǐr

一会儿

In a little while

Yíhuǐr qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?

一会儿请他给我回个电话，好不好？

In a little while please ask him to call me back. All right?

6.

Lǐ Nǚshì xiànzài zài gēn Wáng Dàshǐ kāi huì.

李女士现在在跟王大使开会。

Mrs. **Lǐ** is having a meeting with ambassador **Wáng**.

Cue

jīntiān

今天

today

Jīntiān qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?

今天请她给我回个电话，好不好？

Today please ask him to call me back. All right?

7.

Zhū Tóngzhì xiànzài zài xué Zhōngwén.

朱同志现在在学中文。

Comrade **Zhū** is learning Chinese now.

Cue

xiàwǔ

下午
afternoon

Xiàwǔ qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?

下午请他给我回个电话，好不好？

This afternoon please ask him to call me back. All right?

Expansion Drill

1. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我想跟你当面谈谈。

I would like to talk with you in person.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我给你打电话目的是想跟你当面谈谈。

The reason I called you is that I would like to talk with you in person.

2. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ yíjiàn shì.

我想问你一件事。

I would like to ask you something.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng wèn nǐ yíjiàn shì.

我给你打电话目的是想问你一件事。

I'm calling you to ask you something.

3. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ jǐdiǎn zhōng yǒu gōngfu.

我想问你几点钟有功夫。

I would like to ask you what time you are free.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng wèn nǐ jǐdiǎn zhōng yǒu gōngfu.

我给你打电话目的是想几点钟有功夫。

I am calling you to find out what time I will be available.

4. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我想跟你当面谈谈。

I would like to talk with you in person.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我给你打电话目的是想跟你当面谈谈。

The reason of my calling you is to talk to you face to face.

5. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ yídiǎnr shì.

我想问你一点事儿。

I want to ask you something.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng wèn nǐ yídiǎnr shì.

我给你打电话目的是想问你一点儿事。

The reason of my calling you is to ask you something.

6. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

我想问你三点钟有功夫没有。

I want to ask if you have time at three o'clock.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng wèn nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

我给你打电话目的是想问你三点钟有功夫没有。

The reason of my calling you is to ask if you have time at three o'clock.

7. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我想跟你当面谈谈。

I would like to talk with you in person.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我给你打电话目的是想跟你当面谈谈。

The reason of my calling you is to talk to you face to face.

Substitution Drill

1. Shénme shíhou dōu kényi.

什么时候都可以。

Any time would be fine.

Cue

shéi

谁

who

Shéi dōu kényi.

谁都可以。

Anyone would be fine.

2. Shéi dōu kényi.

谁都可以。

Anyone would be fine.

Cue

nǎr

哪儿

where

Nǎr dōu kényi.

哪儿都可以。

Anywhere would be fine.

3. Nǎr dōu kényi.

哪儿都可以。

Anywhere would be fine.

Cue

něige

哪个

that

Něige dōu kényi.

哪个都可以。

Either will do.

4. Něige dōu kényi.

哪个都可以。

Either will do.

Cue

shénme dìfang

什么地

which place

Shénme dìfang dōu kěyǐ.

什么地方都可以。

Anyone would be fine.

2.

Shéi dōu kěyǐ.

谁都可以。

Anyone would be fine.

Cue

nǎr

哪儿

where

Nǎr dōu kěyǐ.

哪儿都可以。

Anywhere would be fine.

3.

Nǎr dōu kěyǐ.

哪儿都可以。

Anywhere would be fine.

Cue

něige

哪个

that

Něige dōu kěyǐ.

哪个都可以。

Either will do.

4.

Něige dōu kěyǐ.

哪个都可以。

Either will do.

Cue

shénme dìfang

什么地

when

Shénme dìfang dōu kényi.

什么地方都可以。

Any place would be fine.

5. Shénme dìfang dōu kényi.

什么地方都可以。

Any place would be fine.

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Duōshao dōu kényi.

多少都可以。

Any number would be fine.

6. Duōshao dōu kényi.

多少都可以。

Any number would be fine.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how much time

Duó jiǔ dōu kényi.

多久都可以。

Substitution Drill

1. Shénme shíhou dōu kényi.

什么时候都可以。

Any time would be fine.

Cue

Duó jiǔ

多久

Any length of time

Duó jiǔ dōu kényi.

多久都可以。

Any length of time would be fine.

2. Jǐdiǎn zhōng dōu kényi.

几点钟都可以。

Any hour would be fine.

Cue

Jǐge zhōngtóu

几个钟头

Any number of hours

Jǐge zhōngtóu dōu kényi.

几个钟头都可以。

Any number of hours would be fine.

3. Něitiān dōu kényi.

哪天都可以。

Any day would be fine.

Cue

Duōshao tiān

多少天

Any number of days

Duōshao tiān dōu kényi.

多少天都可以。

Any number of days would be fine.

4. Něinián dōu kényi.

哪年都可以。

Any year would be fine.

Cue

Jīnián

几年

Any number of years

Jīnián dōu kěyǐ.

几年都可以。

Any number of years would be fine.

5.

Xīngqījǐ dōu kěyǐ.

星期几都可以。

Any day of the week would be fine.

Cue

Jǐge xīngqī

几个星期

Any number of weeks

Jǐge xīngqī dōu kěyǐ.

几个星期都可以。

Any number of weeks would be fine.

6.

Jǐhào dōu kěyǐ.

几号都可以。

Any date would be fine.

Cue

Duōshao tiān

多少天

Any number of days

Duōshao tiān dōu kěyǐ.

多少天都可以。

Any number of days would be fine.

7.

Jǐyuè dōu kěyǐ.

几月都可以。

Any month would be fine.

Cue

Jǐge yuè

几个月

Any number of months

Jǐge yuè dōu kěyǐ.

几个月都可以。

Any number of months would be fine.

Response Drill

1. Wǒmen míngtiān zài zhèr jiàn ne, háishi zài nàr jiàn ne?
我们明天在这儿见呢，还是在那儿见呢？
Shall we meet here or there tomorrow?

Cue nǎr
哪儿
where

Zài nǎr jiàn dōu kěyǐ.
在哪儿见都可以。
Anywhere would be fine.

2. Wǒmen zuò huǒchē qù ne, háishi zuò fēijī qù ne?
我们坐火车去呢，还是坐飞机去呢？
Shall we go by train, or by plane?

Cue zěnmē
怎么
how

Zěnmē qù dōu kěyǐ.
怎么去都可以。
Any way would be fine.

3. Wǒmen míngtiān jiǔdiǎn zhōng jiàn ne, háishi shídiǎn zhōng jiàn ne?
我们明天九点钟见呢，还是十点钟见呢？
Shall we meet tomorrow at nine o'clock, or ten o'clock?

Cue jǐdiǎn zhōng
几点钟
what time

Jǐdiǎn zhōng jiàn dōu kěyǐ.
几点钟见都可以。
Any time would be fine.

4. Wǒmen zuò qìchē qù ne, háishi zuò huǒchē qù ne?

我们坐汽车去呢，还是坐火车去呢？

Shall we go by car or by train?

Cue

shénme chē

什么车

which kind of transportation

Shénme chē dōu kěyǐ.

什么车都可以。

Any way would be fine.

5. Wǒmen míngtiān qù ne, háishi hòutiān qù ne?

我们明天去呢，还是后天去呢？

Shall we go tomorrow, or the day after tomorrow?

Cue

něitiān

哪天

which day

Něitiān qù dōu kěyǐ.

哪天去都可以。

Any day would be fine.

6. Wǒmen Xīngqīyī qù ne, háishi xīngqīèr qù ne?

我们星期一去呢，还是星期二去呢？

Shall we go on Monday, or Tuesday?

Cue

xīngqījǐ

星期几

what day of week

Xīngqījǐ qù dōu kěyǐ.

星期几去都可以。

Any day of the week would be fine.

7. Wǒmen zuò fēijī qù ne, háishi zuò huǒchē qù ne?

我们坐飞机去呢，还是坐火车去呢？

Shall we go by plane or by train?

Cue

zěnmē

怎么

how

Zěnme qù dōu kěyǐ.

怎么去都可以。

Any way would be fine.

Response Drill

1. Shéi lái?

谁来?

Who is coming?

Shéi dōu lái.

谁都来。

Everyone is coming.

2. Shénme dìfang bù hǎo?

什么地方不好?

Which place is wrong?

Shénme dìfang dōu bù hǎo.

什么地方都不好。

Anywhere is wrong.

3. Nǎige dìfang kěyǐ?

哪个地方可以?

Which place is possible?

Nǎige dìfang dōu kěyǐ.

哪个地方都可以。

Any place is fine.

4. Shéi bú huì?

谁不会?

Who wouldn't?

Shéi dōu bú huì.

谁都不会。

Nobody would.

5. Nǎr hǎo?

哪儿好?

Where is it good?

Nǎr dōu hǎo.

哪儿都好。

Anywhere would be fine.

6. Tā shénme shíhou néng qù?

他/她什么时候能去？

When will he/she be able to go?

Tā shénme shíhou dōu néng qù.

他/她什么时候都能去。

he/she can go whenever he/she wants.

7. Nǐ nǎitiān bù máng?

你哪天不忙？

What days are you not busy?

Wǒ nǎitiān dōu bù máng.

我哪天都不忙。

I'm not busy any day.

Response Drill

1. Nǐ qù nǎr?
你去哪儿?
Where are you going?

Wǒ nǎr dōu qù.
我哪儿都去。
I'm going everywhere.

2. Nǐ dào nǎr qù?
你到哪儿去?
Where are you going?

Wǒ nǎr dōu qù.
我哪儿都去。
I'm going everywhere.

3. Tā qù shénme dìfang?
他/她去什么地方?
Where does he/she go?

Tā shénme dìfang dōu qù.
他/她什么地方都去。
He/she goes everywhere.

4. Tā dào shénme dìfang qù?
他/她到什么地方去?
Where does he/she go?

Tā shénme dìfang dōu qù.
他/她什么地方都去。
He/she goes everywhere.

5. Nǐ mǎi nǎige?
你买哪个?
Which one do you buy?

Wǒ nǎige dōu mǎi.

我哪个都买。

I'll buy either one.

6. Nǐ kàn nǎběn?

你看哪本？

Which book do you read?

Wǒ nǎběn dōu kàn.

我哪本都看。

I read all the books.

7. Nǐ zuò shénme?

你做什么？

What do you do?

Wǒ shénme dōu zuò.

我什么都做。

I do everything.

Response Drill

1. Shéi lái?
谁来?
Who is coming?

Cue Shéi dōu
谁都
everyone

Shéi dōu lái.
谁都来。
Everyone is coming.

2. Shéi kěyǐ?
谁可以?
Who can?

Cue Shéi dōu
谁都
anyone will do

Shéi dōu kěyǐ.
谁都可以。
Anyone can.

3. Shéi lái?
谁来?
Who is coming?

Cue Shéi dōu bù
谁都不
no one

Shéi dōu bù lái.
谁都不来。
No one is coming.

4. Nǐ mǎi něige?

你买哪个？

Which one do you buy?

Cue

něige dōu

哪个都

all of them

Wǒ něige dōu mǎi.

我哪个都买。

I'll buy all of them.

5. Nǐ dào nǎr qù?

你到哪儿去？

Where are you going?

Cue

nǎr dōu bú

哪儿都不

nowhere at all

Wǒ nǎr dōu bú qù.

我哪儿都不去。

I'm going nowhere.

6. Něige hǎo?

哪个好？

Which one is good?

Cue

Něige dōu

哪个都

all of them

Něige dōu hǎo.

哪个都好。

All of them are good.

7. Shéi huì shuō Zhōngguó huà?

谁会说中国话？

Who can speak Chinese?

Cue

Shéi dōu

谁都

everyone

Shéi dōu huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.

谁都会说中国话。

Everyone can speak Chinese.

Unit 3

References

Reference List

1. A: **Huáng Kēzhǎng, nín xiàge Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?**
黃科長，您下個星期六有功夫嗎？
Section Chief Huang, are you free Saturday of next week?
- A: **Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín hé nín fūren dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.**
我想請您和您夫人到我們家來吃個便飯。
I would like to invite you and your wife to come to our house for a simple meal.
2. B: **Nín hébì zhème kèqì?**
您何必怎麼客氣？
Why is it necessary to be so polite?
- A: **Bú shì kèqì.**
不是客氣。
It's not politeness.
- A: **Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou gāng cóng Měiguó lái.**
我有一個朋友剛從美國來。
I have a friend who has just come from America.
- A: **Tā xiànzài zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo jīngjìxué.**
她現在在臺灣大學教經濟學。
She is teaching economics at Táiwān University right now.
- A: **Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen liǎngwèi jièshào jièshào.**
我很想給你們兩位介紹介紹。
I would very much like to introduce the two of you.
3. B: **Nà tài hǎo le!**
那太好了！
That's wonderful!
- B: **Hěn xīwang gēn ta tán tán.**
很希望跟她談談。
I wish very much to talk with her.
- B: **Búguò, kǒngpà wǒde Yīngwén bù xíng.**
不過，恐怕我的英文不行。
However, I'm afraid that my English isn't good enough.
- B: **Búdàn shuōde bù hǎo, yǒu shíhou yě tīngbudǒng.**

- 不但說得好，有時候也聽不懂。
Not only don't I speak well, (but) sometimes I can't understand what I hear either.
4. A: Náli, náli.
哪裏，哪裏。
Not at all, not at all.
- A: Nín shuōde gēn Měiguó rén yíyàng hǎo.
您說得跟美國人一樣好。
You speak as well as an American.
5. *A: Zěnmeyàng? Liùdiǎn bàn duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?
怎麼樣？六點半對您方便不方便？
How shall we do it? Would six-thirty be convenient for you?
- B: Fāngbian, fāngbian.
方便，方便。
That would be fine.
6. A: Wǒ méi qǐng shénme rén. Hěn suíbiàn.
我沒請什麼人。很隨便。
I haven't invited anyone special. It's very informal.
- B: Nà jiù xiān xiè le.
那就先謝了。
Well then, I'll thank you in advance.
- Additional Required Vocabulary
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)
7. bù tóng
不同
to be different
8. chá
茶
tea
9. chī fàn
吃飯
to eat, to have a meal
10. dànshi
但是
but
11. érqiě
而且
furthermore, moreover
12. fàn

13.	飯 (cooked) rice hē
14.	喝 to drink jiāo shū 教書 to teach

Vocabulary

biànfàn	便飯	a simple, informal meal
búdàn...yě	不但...也	not only... but also
búguò	不過	however, but
bù tóng	不同	to be different
chá	茶	tea
chī fàn	吃飯	to eat, to have a meal
dànshi	但是	but
érqiě	而且	furthermore, moreover
fàn	飯	(cooked) rice
hē	喝	to drink
hébi	何必	why is it necessary (to)
jiāo shū	教書	to teach
jièshào	介紹	to introduce
kǒngpà	恐怕	to be afraid that (something is or is not the case)
suíbiàn	隨便	to be informal/casual; as you like, as you wish, whatever suits you, “according to convenience”
tài hǎo le!	太好了!	wonderful!
tīngbudǒng	聽不懂	cannot understand
tīngdedǒng	聽得懂	can understand
xīwàng (xīwang)	希望	to hope, to wish to
yíyàng	一樣	to be alike/equal
yǒu shíhou (yǒu shihou)	有時候	sometimes
(introduced on C-2 tape)		
cānjiā	參加	to attend
dǎ (ge) diànhuà	打(個)電話	to make a phone call
hǎode duō	好得多	much better
tīng diànhuà	聽電話	to answer the phone
yānhuo	烟火	fireworks display
yóuyuánhuì	游園會	carnival
zhèng hǎo	正好	just right

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. A: **Huáng Kēzhǎng, nín xiàge Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?**
黃科長，您下個星期六有功夫嗎？
Section Chief Huang, are you free Saturday of next week?
- A: **Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín hé nín fūren dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.**
我想請您和您夫人到我們家來吃個便飯。
I would like to invite you and your wife to come to our house for a simple meal.

Xiàge Xīngqīliù means “Saturday of next week.” “Saturday of this week” is **zhèige Xīngqīliù**, and “Saturday of last week” is **shàngge Xīngqīliù**.⁴

Chī ge biànfàn: Here the verb **chī**, “to eat [something],” takes the object (**yi**)**ge biànfàn**, “a simple/informal family meal.” When talking about the general activity of eating, however, use **chī** with the general object **fàn**, literally “(cooked) rice”: **chī fàn**, “to eat”

The word **biànfàn** is used as a modest description in inviting guests for a meal served in the home. The meal is generally “simple” only in the sense of not being a banquet. A Chinese family meal usually consists of several dishes plus a soup.

Notes on №2

2. B: **Nín hébì zhème kèqi?**
您何必怎麼客氣？
Why is it necessary to be so polite?
- A: **Bú shì kèqi.**
不是客氣。
It’s not politeness.
- A: **Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou gāng cóng Měiguó lái.**
我有一個朋友剛從美國來。
I have a friend who has just come from America.
- A: **Tā xiànzài zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo jīngjìxué.**
她現在在臺灣大學教經濟學。
She is teaching economics at Táiwān University right now.
- A: **Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen liǎngwèi jièshào jièshào.**
我很想給你們兩位介紹介紹。
I would very much like to introduce the two of you.

⁴he words “this,” “next,” and “last” in English are often ambiguous. “This” sometimes means “Just past,” sometimes “the coming,” and sometimes “of next week.” “Next” sometimes means “the coming” and sometimes means “of next week.” “Last” sometimes means “Just past” and sometimes means “of last week.” In Chinese, however, **zhèige** usually means “of this week”; **xiàge**, “of next week”; and **shàngge**, “of last week.” But ambiguities do sometimes arise.

Some Chinese consider that the week begins on Sunday. Probably most Chinese however, consider Monday the first day of the week.

Notes on №2

Hébi is a somewhat formal way of saying “Why is it necessary to...?” **Hé** is a literary word for “why.” **Bi** is a literary word for “must.” (You may recognize it from **bú bi**, “need not,” “to be unnecessary.”)

Notice that the first speaker in exchange 2 does not respond to the dinner invitation with an immediate “Thank you, I would love to,” as one might do in English. Instead, the Chinese prefer the equivalent of “That’s too kind of you” or “Oh, you really shouldn’t.” When you receive an indefinite invitation (like “I hope you can come over to my house for dinner some day”), do not ask immediately for the date and time. Rather, you should thank the person for his politeness and say that you also hope that you can get together. Vague invitations may simply be in superficial accordance with the rules of etiquette, and you might put your acquaintance on the spot by accepting.

Bú shì kèqǐ is the appropriate response when a person suggests that you are treating him too politely.

Jiāo, “to teach,” is a verb which requires a general object when no specific object is mentioned. Contrast **jiāo shū**, “to teach,” with **jiāo jīngjìxué**, “to teach economics.”

Nǐmen liǎngwèi means “the two of you,” or “you two.” The other plural pronouns may be used similarly:

他們四個人都已經去過了。
Tāmen sìge rén dōu yǐjīng qùguo le.
Those four have all been there already.
他們三個人都想念歷史。
Tāmen sānge rén dōu xiǎng niàn lìshǐ. study history.
All three of them are planning to

A number phrase may also follow a list of nouns or pronouns in Chinese. Either the listing or the number is usually omitted in the English translation.

我，你，他三個人都去，好不好？
Wǒ, nǐ, tā sānge rén dōu qù, hǎo bu hǎo?
Why don’t all three of us go?
李先生跟王先生兩位都給我打了電話了。
Lǐ Xiānsheng gēn Wáng Xiānsheng liǎngwèi dōu gěi wǒ dǎle diànhuà le.
Both Mr. Lǐ and Mr. Wáng (the two of them) called me.

Gěi nǐmen liǎngwèi jièshào jièshào: There are two things to note in this sentence. First of all, while the English language “introduces two people TO each other,” the Chinese language “introduces FOR the two people,” **gěi...jièshào**. Secondly, the speaker has chosen to repeat the verb **jièshào**.

In a sentence expressing the speaker’s desired course of action, the reduplicated form of the verb makes the statement less blunt and demanding.

Notes on №3

3. B: **Nà tài hǎo le!**

	那太好了！ That's wonderful!
B:	Hěn xīwang gēn ta tán.án. 很希望跟她談談。 I wish very much to talk with her.
B:	Búguò, kǒngpà wǒde Yīngwén bù xíng. 不過，恐怕我的英文不行。 However, I'm afraid that my English isn't good enough.
B:	Búdàn shuōde bù hǎo, yǒu shíhou yě tīngbudǒng. 不但說得好，有時候也聽不懂。 Not only don't I speak well, (but) sometimes I can't understand what I hear either.

Tài hǎo le, “wonderful,” or, more literally, “too good.” you have seen tài translated as “excessively,” or “too”: “It’s too expensive!” Tài guì le!

In other contexts, tài simply indicates an extreme degree and is translated as “very.” When used this way, tài is commonly heavily stressed.

這本書真是太有意思了！
Zhèběn shū zhēn shì tài yǒu yìsi le!
This book is really very interesting!

Búguò, “however,” is often interchangeable with kěshi, “but,” and is therefore used more frequently than the English “however.”

Kǒngpà means “to be afraid that [something is/is not the case].” It sometimes means “probably,” as in Zhèběn shū kǒngpà shì tāde, “This book is probably his.”

Búdàn...ye... is equivalent to the English “not only... but also....” Here are some examples:

Tā búdan huì shuō Zhōngwén, yě huì shuō Rìwén.
他不但會說中文，也會說日文。
Not only can he speak Chinese, but he can also speak Japanese.
Tā búdan bù xǐhuan hóngde, yě bù xǐhuan lánde.
他不但不喜歡紅的，也不喜歡藍的。
Not only doesn't he like the red one, but he doesn't like the blue one either.

Tīngbudǒng, “can't understand”: The verb dǒng is used to indicate the result in a compound verb of result. Here is another example of dǒng used in this way:

Zhōngwén bàozhǐ nǐ kàndedǒng kànbudǒng? 中文報紙你看得懂看不懂？ Can you read (and understand) Chinese newspapers?
--

Shuōde bù hǎo VS. tīngbudǒng: The many ways in which one-syllable Chinese verbs may be combined to make patterns and compounds can be confusing. In No. 3, you see both an action verb and its

manner adverb (in the negative), *shuōde bù hǎo*, and a compound verb of result (in its “unable” form), *tīngbudǒng*. Compare these two forms:

ACTION VERB	MARKER	NEG.	ADV.	MANNER
<i>shuō</i>	-DE	<i>bù</i>	<i>hǎo</i>	
<i>shuō</i>	-DE		<i>hěn</i>	<i>hǎo</i>

ACTION VERB	MARKER or NEG (not both)	RESULT
<i>tīng</i>	- <i>bù</i>	- <i>dǒng</i>
<i>tīng</i>	- <i>de</i>	- <i>dǒng</i>

The marker *de* is always part of the manner adverb expression but alternates with *bù* in compound verbs of result. Manner adverb expressions expand to allow not only for negation but also for additional adverbs such as *hěn* and *tài*. Compound verbs of result cannot do this. There are always three, and only three, parts to the compound verb of result.

Notes on №4-5

4. A: *Náli, náli.*
 哪裏，哪裏。
 Not at all, not at all.
- A: *Nín shuōde gēn Měiguó rén yíyàng hǎo.*
 您說得跟美國人一樣好。
 You speak as well as an American.
5. *A: *Zěnmeyàng? Liùdiǎn bàn duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?*
 怎麼樣？六點半對您方便不方便？
 How shall we do it? Would six-thirty be convenient for you?
- B: *Fāngbian, fāngbian.*
 方便，方便。
 That would be fine.

Gēn...yíyàng hǎo: *Yíyàng* is an adjectival verb meaning “to be the same.”

When a sentence tells you in what respect the compared items are alike, *yíyàng* acts as an adverb and may be translated as “equally.”

<i>Wǒmen liǎngge rénde chē</i> 我們兩個認得車 The cars belonging to the two of us	<i>yíyàng.</i> 一樣。 alike.
--	---------------------------------

“Our cars are alike.”

<i>Wǒmen liǎngge rénde chē</i> 我們兩個認得車 The cars belonging to the two of us	<i>yíyàng guì.</i> 一樣貴。 equally expensive.
--	--

“Our cars are equally expensive.”

The area of comparability may be described by predicates other than adjectival verbs.

Tāmen liǎngge rén	dōu	yíyàng	xǐhuan	niàn shū.
他們兩個人	都	一樣	喜歡	念書。
The two of them	both	equally	like	to study

“The two of them are equally studious.”

The items being compared may be expressed separately, using *gēn*. In this case, *gēn* is the prepositional verb meaning “with.” The item preceding *gēn* is compared WITH the object of *gēn*.

Wǒde chē	gēn	tāde chē	yíyàng.
我的車	跟	他的車	一樣。
My car	with	his car	alike.

“My car is like his.”

Gēn may be used to compare nouns, pronouns, noun phrases, and clauses. Often one of the two phrases or clauses is a shorter form of the other.

Nǐ shuōde	gēn	Měiguó rén (shuōde)	yíyàng	hǎo.
你說得	跟	美國人(說得)	一樣	好。
You speak	with	American [speak]	equally	good.

”You speak as well as an American.”

Wǒde chē	gēn	tāde (chē)	yíyàng.
我的車	跟	他的(車)	一樣。
My car	with	his [car]	alike.

“My car is like his (car).”

Nǐ (kāide)	gēn	wǒ	kāide	yíyàng	kuài.
你(開得)	跟	我	開得	一樣	快。
You [drive]	with	me	drive	equally	fast.

“You drive as fast as I do.”

Notes on №6

6. A: Wǒ méi qǐng shénme rén. Hěn suíbiàn.
我沒請什麼人。很隨便。
I haven't invited anyone special. It's very informal.
- B: Nà jiù xiān xiè le.
那就先謝了。
Well then, I'll thank you in advance.

Méi qǐng shénme rén: In this sentence, **shénme** is not the question word “what” “but is the indefinite “any.” When used with **bù** or **méi**, **shénme rén** means “anybody special,” or “anyone in particular.” All question words may follow the verbs in negative statements to give similar meanings. Here are some examples of “any___ special” meanings:

<p>Wǒ méi chī shénme fàn. 我沒吃什麼飯。 I didn't eat much of anything.</p> <p>Wǒ méi gēn shéi qù. 我沒跟誰去。 I didn't go with anybody special.</p> <p>Wǒ méi dào nǎr qù. 我沒到那兒去。 I didn't go anyplace in particular.</p> <p>Wǒ méiyǒu duōshǎo qián. 我沒有多少前。 I don't have any money to speak of.</p> <p>Wǒ bú yào jǐge. 我不要幾個。 I don't want but a few. (I want only a few.)</p>
--

Suíbiàn is a frequently used expression which has connotations of “casual,” as contrasted with **kèqì**, “proper” or “formal.” Literally, **suíbiàn** means “according to convenience.” Here are some examples:

<p>Zěnmē zuò? 怎麼做？ How shall we do it?</p> <p>Suíbiàn. 隨便。 However you like.</p> <p>Suíbiàn shénme shíhòu lái. 隨便什麼時候來。 Come anytime you like.</p> <p>Suíbiàn zuò nǎr dōu kěyǐ. 隨便坐哪兒都可以。 You may sit anywhere you like.</p>
--

Nà jiù xiān xiè le: In this sentence, **nà** is acting as an adverb meaning “in that case,” “if so,” or “then.” The English translation “I’ll thank you in advance, then” is very formal. You would be more likely to say something like “Great. I’m looking forward to it.”

Notes on additional required vocabulary

7. **bù tóng**

	不同	to be different
8.	chá	
	茶	tea
9.	chī fàn	
	吃飯	to eat, to have a meal
10.	dànshi	
	但是	but
11.	érqiě	
	而且	furthermore, moreover
12.	fàn	
	飯	(cooked) rice
13.	hē	
	喝	to drink
14.	jiāo shū	
	教書	to teach

Bù tóng may be used in much the same way as bù yíyàng. Note that bù tóng occurs only in the negative. (There is no tóng.)

Shànghái huà hé Běijīng huà hěn bù tóng.

上海話和北京話很不同。

The Shànghǎi dialect and the Běijīng dialect are very different.

Chī fàn, “to eat,” is an example of a verb plus a general object used to express a general activity. The verb chi may also take specific objects, such as miàn, “noodles.”

Dànshi, “but,” is used much like kěshi, “but.”

Héběi rén tīngdedǒng Běijīng huà ma?

河北人聽得懂北京話嗎？

Can people from Héběi understand the Běijīng dialect?

Tīngdedǒng, dànshi Héběi huà hé Běijīng huà bù yíyàng.

聽得懂，但是河北話和北京話不一樣。

Yes, but the Héběi dialect and the Běijīng dialect are different.

Érqiě, “furthermore,” “moreover”: Use érqiě at the beginning of a sentence or clause.

Zhèige huāpíng tài guì, érqǐě yě tài dà le. Wǒ bù xiǎng mǎi.

這個花瓶太貴，而且也太大了。我不想買。

This vase is too expensive, and furthermore it's too big. I don't want to buy it.

Fàn, “(cooked) rice”: The definition of **fàn** is qualified as “cooked” because the Chinese use several words for “rice,” depending on whether it is in the field, ready to cook, or on the table.

Jiāo shū is a verb plus a general object meaning “to teach.” **Jiāo** may be used without its general object, as in **Jiāo Zhōngwén**, “teach the Chinese language.”

Drills

Substitution Drill

1. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ míngtiān wǎnshàng yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你明天晚上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tomorrow evening?

- Cue míngtiān zǎoshàng

明天早上

tomorrow morning

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ míngtiān zǎoshàng yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你明天早上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tomorrow morning?

2. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ míngtiān zǎoshàng yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你明天早上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tomorrow evening?

- Cue Xīngqīsi

星期四

Thursday

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ Xīngqīsi yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你星期四有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free Thursday?

3. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ Xīngqīsi yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你星期四有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free Thursday?

- Cue jīntiān wǎnshàng

今天晚上

today evening

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你今天晚上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tonight?

4. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你今天晚上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tonight?

Cue xià Xīngqīliù
下星期六
next Saturday

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ xià Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你下星期六有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free next Saturday?

5. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ xià Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你下星期六有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free next Saturday?

Cue zhèige Xīngqīwǔ
这个星期五
Friday this week

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige Xīngqīwǔ yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你这个星期五有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free this Friday?

6. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige Xīngqīwǔ yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你这个星期五有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free this Friday?

Cue zhèige yuè qīhào
这个月七号
this month on the 7th

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige yuè qīhào yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你这个月七号有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free 7th of this month?

7. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige yuè qīhào yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你这个月七号有功夫吗？

Section Chief **Huáng**, are you free the 7th of this month?

Cue

xiàge yuè yīhào

下个月一号

last month the first

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ xiàge yuè yīhào yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你下个月一号有功夫马？

Section Chief **Huáng**, are you free next month the first?

Expansion Drill

1. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

wǒmen jiā

我们家

our house

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到我们家来吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to our house for a simple meal.

2. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

fànguǎnr

饭馆儿

restaurant

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào fànguǎnr qù chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到饭馆儿去吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to go to a restaurant for a simple meal.

3. Tā xiǎng qǐng nín.

他想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

National Hotel

Tā xiǎng qǐng nín dào Mínzú Fàndiàn qù chī ge biànfàn.

他想请您到民族饭店去吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to the National Hotel for a simple meal.

4. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

wǒ fùmù jiā

我父母家

my parents house

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào wǒ fùmù jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到我父母家来吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to my parents house for a simple meal.

5.

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

Běijīng Fàndiàn

北京饭店

Běijīng Hotel

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào Běijīng Fàndiàn qù chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到北京饭店去吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to the Běijīng Hotel for a simple meal.

6.

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

nèige fànguǎnr

那个饭馆儿

that restaurant

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào nèige fànguǎnr qù chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到那个饭馆儿去吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to that restaurant for a simple meal.

7.

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

wǒ jiā

我家

my home

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào wǒ jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到我家来吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to my home for a simple meal.

Response Drill

1. Speaker: Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

他在台湾大学工作吗？

Does he work at Táiwān University?

Cue

jīngjìxué

经济学

economics

Duì le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo jīngjìxué.

对了。他在台湾大学教经济学。

That's right. He teaches economics at Táiwān University.

2. Tā zài Dézhōu Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

他在德州大学工作吗？

Does he work at the University of Texas?

Cue

lìshǐ

历史

history

Duì le. Tā zài Dézhōu Dàxué jiāo lìshǐ.

对了。他在德州大学教历史。

That's right. He teaches history at the University of Texas.

3. Lǐ Xiānsheng zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

李先生在加州大学工作吗？

Does Mr. Lǐ work at the University of California?

Cue

zhèngzhìxué

政治学

politics

Duì le. Tā zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué jiāo zhèngzhìxué.

对了。他在加州大学教政治学。

That's right. He teaches political science at the University of California.

4. Chén Xiānsheng zài Bīnzhōu Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

陈先生在宾州大学工作吗？

Does Mr. Chén work at the University of Pennsylvania?

Cue

Zhōngwén

中文

Chinese

Dui le. Tā zài Bīnzhōu Dàxué jiāo Zhōngwén.

对了。他在宾州大学教中文。

That's right. He teaches Chinese at the University of Pennsylvania.

5. Āndésēn Xiānsheng zài Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

安德森先生在台湾大学工作吗？

Does Mr. Anderson work at National Taiwan University?

Cue

Yīngguo wénxué

英国文学

British literature

Dui le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo Yīngguo wénxué.

对了。他在台湾大学教英国文学。

That's right. He teaches English literature at National Taiwan University.

6. Wáng Xiānsheng zài Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

王先生在台湾大学工作吗？

Does Mr. Wáng work in National Taiwan University?

Cue

Zhōngguo wénxué

中国文学

Chinese literature

Dui le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo Zhōngguo wénxué.

对了。他在台湾大学教中国文学。

That's right. He teaches Chinese literature at National Taiwan University.

7. Zhào Xiǎojie zài Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

赵小姐在台湾大学工作吗？

Does Miss Zhào work in National Taiwan University?

Cue

Zhōngguo lishǐ

中国历史
Chinese history

Dui le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

对了。他在台湾大学教中国历史。

That's right. He teaches Chinese history at National Taiwan University.

Transformation Drill

1. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Wǎng Tóngzhì

王同志

Comrade Wǎng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Wáng Tóngzhì jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟王同志介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Comrade Wǎng.

2. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Liú Tóngzhì

刘同志

Comrade Liú

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Liú Tóngzhì jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟刘同志介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Comrade Liú.

3. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Zhào Tóngzhì

赵同志

Comrade Zhào

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Zhào Tóngzhì jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟赵同志介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Comrade Zhào.

4. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Zhāng Xiānsheng

张先生

Mr. Zhāng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Zhāng Xiānsheng jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟张先生介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Mr. Zhāng.

5.

Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Yáng Nǚshì

杨女士

Mrs. Yáng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Yáng Nǚshì jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟杨女士介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Mrs. Yáng.

6.

Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Zhāng Kēzhǎng

张科长

Chief Zhāng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟张科长介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Chief Zhāng.

7.

Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Lǐ Shàoxiào

李少校

Major Li

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Lǐ Shàoxiào jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟李少校介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Major Li.

Expansion Drill

1. Tā tīngbujàn.

他听不见。

He can't hear.

Cue

kànbujàn

看不见

Tā búdàn tīngbujàn yě kànbujàn.

他不但听不见也看不见。

Not only can't he hear, [but] he can't see either.

2. Tā shuōbùduì.

他说不对。

He did not say it right.

Cue

tīngbudǒng

听不懂

Tā búdàn shuōbùduì yě tīngbudǒng.

他不但说不对也听不懂。

Not only did he not say it right, [but] he didn't understand it either.

3. Tā chībuhǎo.

他吃不好。

He doesn't eat well.

Cue

hēbuhǎo

喝不好

Tā búdàn chībuhǎo yě hēbuhǎo.

他不但吃不好也喝不好。

Not only he can't eat well, [but] also can't drink well.

4. Tā shuōbùduì.

他说不对。

He didn't say it right.

Cue

xiěbùduì

写不对

Tā búdàn shuōbùduì yě xiěbùduì.

他不但说不对也写不对。

Not only did he said it wrong[but]also wrote it wrong.

5.

Tā kànbudǒng.

他看不懂。

He can't read.

Cue

tīngbudǒng

听不懂

Tā búdàn kànbudǒng yě tīngbudǒng.

他不但看不懂也听不懂。

Not only can't he read[but]also can't understand.

6.

Tā tīngbudǒng.

他听不懂。

He can't understand.

Cue

shuōbùduì

说不对

Tā búdàn tīngbudǒng yě shuōbùduì.

他不但听不懂也说不对。

Not only did he not understand, [but] he also spoke incorrectly.

7.

Tā kànbujiàn.

他看不见。

He can't see.

Cue

tīngbujàn

听不见

Tā búdàn kànbujiàn yě tīngbujàn.

他不但看不见也听不见。

Not only can't he see [but] also can't hear.

Combination Drill

1. Tā shuōde bù hǎo. Tā tīngbudǒng.

他说得不好。他听不懂。

He speaks poorly. He can't understand.

Tā búdàn shuōde bù hǎo yě tīngbudǒng.

他不但说得不好也听不懂。

Not only does he speak poorly, [but] he can't understand either.

2. Tā shuōde bù hǎo. Wǒ shuōde bù hǎo.

他说得不好。我说得不好。

He speaks poorly. I speak poorly.

Búdàn tā shuōde bù hǎo wǒ yě shuōde bù hǎo.

不但说得不好我也说得不好。

He not only speaks poorly, [but] I speak poorly too.

3. Tā niànde hǎo. Tā xiěde hǎo.

他念得好。他写得好。

He reads well. He writes well.

Tā búdàn niànde hǎo yě xiěde hǎo.

他不但念得好也写得好。

Not only does he reads well but he also writes well.

4. Tā niànde hǎo. Wǒ niànde hǎo.

他念得好。我念得好。

He reads well. I read well.

Búdàn tā niànde hǎo wǒ yě niànde hǎo.

不但他念得好也念得好。

He not only reads well but also writes well.

5. Tā tīngbudǒng. Tā shuōbuhǎo.

他听不懂。他说不好。

He can't understand. He can't say it well.

Tā búdàn tīngbudǒng yě shuōbuhǎo.

他不但听不懂也说不好。

Not only can he not understand, but he can not speak well.

6. Tā kāide bù hǎo. Wǒ kāide bù hǎo.

他开得不好。我开得不好。

He doesn't drive well. I don't drive well.

Búdàn tā kāide bù hǎo wǒ yě kāide bù hǎo.

不但他开得不好也开得不好。

Not only does he drive badly, but I also drive poorly.

7. Tā kànbujiàn. Tā tīngbudǒng.

他看不见。他听不懂。

He can't see. He can't understand.

Tā búdàn kànbujiàn yě tīngbudǒng.

他不但看不见也听不懂。

He not only can't see but also can't understand.

Transformation Drill

1. Wǒ bù néng dào Zhōngguo qù. Wǒde Zhōngwén bù xíng.

我不能到中国去。我的中文不行。

I can't go to China. My Chinese isn't good enough.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng dào Zhōngguo qù, búguò kǒngpà wǒde Zhōngwén bù xíng.

我很希望到中国去，不过恐怕我的中文不行。

I hope very much to go to China, but I'm afraid my Chinese isn't good enough.

2. Tā bù kěyǐ xué Zhōngwén. Tā méiyǒu gōngfu.

他不可以学中文。他没有功夫。

He can't learn Chinese. he has no free time.

Tā hěn xīwàng xué Zhōngwén, búguò kǒngpà tā méiyǒu gōngfu.

他很希望学中文，不过恐怕他没有功夫。

He (would love) really hopes to learn Chinese, but I'm afraid he doesn't have free time.

3. Wǒ bù kěyǐ mǎi dōngxi. Wǒde qián bú gòu.

我不可以买东西。我的钱不够。

I can't buy anything. I don't have enough money.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng mǎi dōngxi, búguò kǒngpà wǒde qián bú gòu.

我很希望买东西，不过恐怕我的钱不够。

I (would love) really hope to buy something, but I'm afraid I don't have enough money.

4. Wǒ bù néng qù kàn péngyou. Wǒ méiyǒu gōngfu.

我不能去看朋友。我没有功夫。

can't go see my friends. I have no free time .

Wǒ hěn xīwàng qù kàn péngyou, búguò kǒngpà wǒ méiyǒu gōngfu.

我很希望去看朋友，不过恐怕我没有功夫。

I (would love) really hope to visit my friends, but I'm afraid I don't have free time.

5. Wǒ bù néng shuō Zhōngguo huà. Wǒde Zhōngguo huà bù xíng.

我不能说中国话。我的中国话不行。

I can not speak Chinese. My Chinese is not good.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng shuō Zhōngguo huà, búguò kǒngpà wǒde Zhōngguo huà bù xíng.

我很希望说中国话，不过恐怕我的中国话不行。

I (would love) really hope to speak Chinese, but I'm afraid my Chinese is not good enough.

6. Wǒ bù néng gēn tā qù chī fàn. Wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān.

我不能跟他去吃饭。我没有时间。

I can't go to dinner with him. I do not have time.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng gēn tā qù chī fàn, búguò kǒngpà wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān.

我很希望跟他去吃饭，不过恐怕我没有时间。

I (would love) really hope to go to dinner with him, but I'm afraid I don't have time.

7. Wǒ bù kěyǐ qù kāi huì. Wǒ tīngbudǒng tāmen shuōde huà.

我不可以可以去开会。我听不懂他们说的话。

I can't go to the meeting. I cannot understand what they were saying.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng qù kāi huì, búguò kǒngpà wǒ tīngbudǒng tāmen shuōde huà.

我很希望去开会，不过恐怕我听不懂他们说的话。

I (would love) really hope to go to a meeting, but I'm afraid I can't understand a word they say.

Transformation Drill

1. Nǐde chá gēn tāde yíyàng duō.
你的茶跟他的一样多。
You have as much tea as he does.

Cue hē
喝
drink

Nǐ hē chá, hēde gēn tā yíyàng duō.
你喝茶，喝得跟他一样多。
You drink as much tea as he does.

2. Nǐde dōngxi gēn tāde yíyàng piányi.
你的东西跟他的一样便宜。
Your stuff is as cheap as his.

Cue mǎi
买
buy

Nǐ mǎi dōngxi, mǎide gēn tā yíyàng piányi.
你买东西，买得跟他的一样便宜。
You buy something as cheap as he his.

3. Nǐde shū gēn tāde yíyàng duō.
你的书跟他的一样多。
You have as many books as he does.

Cue niàn
念
read

Nǐ niàn shū, niànde gēn tā yíyàng duō.
你念书，念得跟他的一样多。
You read as much as he does.

4. Nǐde shū gēn tāde yíyàng hǎo.

你的书跟他的一样好。

Your book is as good as his.

Cue

jiāo

教

teach

Nǐ jiāo shū, jiāode gēn tā yíyàng hǎo.

你教书，教得跟他的一样好。

You teach as well as he does.

5.

Nǐde fàn gēn tāde yíyàng duō.

你的饭跟他的一样多。

You have as much rice as he does.

Cue

chī

吃

eat

Nǐ chī fàn, chīde gēn tā yíyàng duō.

你吃饭，吃得跟他的一样多。

You eat as much as he does.

6.

Nǐde diànhuà gēn tāde yíyàng duō.

你的电话跟他的一样多。

You have as many calls as he does.

Cue

dǎ

打

call

Nǐ dǎ diànhuà, dǎde gēn tā yíyàng duō.

你打电话，打得跟他的一样多。

You call as much as he does.

7.

Nǐde Zhōngguó huà gēn tāde yíyàng hǎo.

你的中国话跟他的一样好。

Your Chinese is as good as his.

Cue

shuō

说
speak

Nǐ shuō Zhōngguó huà, shuōde gēn tā yíyàng hǎo.

你说中国话，说得跟他的一样好。

You speak Chinese as well as he does.

Response Drill

1. Nǐ qǐng le jǐ ge rén?
你请了几个人?
How many people did you invite?

Wǒ méi qǐng jǐ ge rén.
我没请几个人。
I didn't invite many at all.

2. Tā hē shénme?
他喝什么?
What does he drink?

Tā bù hē shénme.
他不喝什么。
He doesn't drink much of anything.

3. Nǐ qǐng shéi?
你请谁?
Who do you invite?

Wǒ bù qǐng shéi.
我不请谁。
I'm not inviting anyone.

4. Tā mǎi le jǐ běn shū?
他买了几本书?
How many books does he buy?

Tā méi mǎi jǐ běn shū.
他没买几本书。
He didn't buy many books.

5. Nǐ qǐng shénme rén?
你请什么人?
What kind of people do you invite?

Wǒ bù qǐng shénme rén.

我不请什么人。

I don't invite anyone.

6. Tā dào nǎr qù le?

他到哪儿去了？

Where did he go?

Tā méi dào nǎr qù.

他没到哪儿去。

He didn't go anywhere.

7. Nǐ yǒu duōshao qián?

你有多少钱？

How much money do you have?

Wǒ méiyǒu duōshao qián.

我没有多少钱。

I don't have much money.

Unit 4

References

Reference List

1. A: [Huáng Kēzhǎng, Huáng Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng.](#)
黃科長，黃太太，歡迎歡迎。
Section Chief [Huáng](#), Mrs. [Huáng](#)—welcome.
A: [Qǐng jìn.](#)
請進。
Please come in.
2. B: [Fù Tàitai, nín hǎo?](#)
富太太，您好？
How are you, Mrs. Franklin?
B: [Zhè shì yìdiǎn xiǎo yìsi.](#)
這是一點小意思。
Here is a small token of appreciation.
3. B: [Wǒ zhīdào nín xǐhuan shānshuǐ huà.](#)
我知道您喜歡山水畫。
I know you like landscape paintings.
B: [Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huà le yìzhāng.](#)
特別請朋友給您畫了一張。
I asked a friend to paint one especially for you.
*A: [Nín zhēn shì tài kèqì. Xièxie.](#)
您真是太客氣。謝謝。
You are really too polite. Thanks.
A: [Lái, wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.](#)
來，我給你們介紹介紹。
Come. I'll introduce the two of you.
4. A: [Zhèiwei shì He Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo jīngjìxué.](#)
這位是何教授，在台大教經濟學。
This is Professor Hollins, who teaches economics at [Táiwān](#) University.
A: [Hé Jiàoshòu, zhèiwei shì Huáng Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.](#)
何教授，這位是黃科長，在臺灣銀行工作。
Professor Hollins, this is Section Chief [Huáng](#), who works at the Bank of [Táiwān](#).
A: [Zhèiwei shì Huáng Tàitai.](#)

5. B: 這位是黃太太。
This is Mrs. Huáng.
Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.
久仰，久仰。
Glad to meet you.
- B: Nín lái le duō jiǔ le?
您來了多久了？
How long have you been here?
- C: Jiǔyǎng. Wǒ gāng lái liǎngge yuè.
久仰。我剛來兩個月。
Glad to meet you. It has been only two months since I came.
6. C: Hái yǒu hěn duō bù shóuxide dìfang.
還有很多不熟悉的地方。
There is still much I'm not familiar with.
- C: Yǐhòu hái yào xiàng nín qǐngjiào.
以後還要向您請教。
Later I'll need to request more advice from you.
7. B: Nǎli, nǎli.
哪裏，哪裏。
Not at all, not at all.
- B: Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō jiànmiàn.
希望以後有機會多見面。
I hope that in the future we will have an opportunity to meet more.
8. fāngfǎ
方法
method, way, means
9. fǎzi
法子
method, way
10. huà'er
畫兒
painting (Běijīng pronunciation)
11. qǐng zuò
請坐
please sit down
12. shèhuìxué
社會學
sociology
13. túshūguǎn

14.

圖書館

library

zuò

坐

to sit

Vocabulary

fāngfǎ	方法	method, way, means
fǎzi	法子	method, way (Běijīng)
huà	畫	to paint
huà(r) (yìzhāng)	畫兒 (一張)	a painting
huānyíng	歡迎	to welcome
jiànmiàn	見面	to meet someone, to see someone
jiàoshòu	教授	professor
jìn	進	to enter
jiǔyǎng	久仰	glad to meet you
qǐngjiào	請教	to ask advice, to consult
qǐng zuo	請坐	please sit down
shānshuǐ	山水	mountains and rivers, scenery with hills and water
shānshuǐ (yìzhāng)	huà(r) 山水畫兒 (一張)	landscape painting
shèhuìxué	社會學	sociology
shóuxi	熟悉	to be familiar
Tāidà	台大	Táiwān University
tèbié	特別	especially
túshūguǎn	圖書館	library
xiang	向	towards; from
xiǎo yìsi	小意思	a token of appreciation
zuo	坐	to sit
biǎoyǎn	表演	to give a demonstration
bú dà hǎo mǎi	不大好買	not very easy to buy
duì...shóuxi	對...熟悉	to be familiar with
Jiàoyùbù	教育部	Ministry of Education
mǎi cài	買菜	to buy groceries
sòng gěi	送給	to give
xǐ yīshang	洗衣裳	to wash clothes
yánjiū	研究	to study, to do research
yòuéryuǎn	幼兒園	kindergarten
yóu huà	油畫	oil painting

zhǎnlǎn	展覽	exhibition
zhàogu	照顧	to take care of
zuò fan	做飯	to cook
zuòyè	作業	homework

Reference Notes

Notes on №1-2

1. A: **Huáng Kēzhǎng, Huáng Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng.**
黄科长，黄太太，欢迎欢迎。
Section Chief **Huáng**, Mrs. **Huáng**—welcome.
- A: **Qǐng jìn.**
請進。
Please come in.
2. B: **Fù Tàitai, nín hǎo?**
富太太，您好？
How are you, Mrs. Franklin?
- B: **Zhè shì yídiǎn xiǎo yìsi.**
這是一點小意思。
Here is a small token of appreciation.

Xiǎo yìsi: You have already seen **yìsi** in the expression **yǒu yìsi**, “to be interesting.” **Yìsi** means “meaning,” “significance,” “intention,” “idea.” In No. 2, above, **xiǎo yìsi** (literally, “small [good] intent”) is an idiomatic expression meaning “a small (token of my) feelings of appreciation.”

Notes on №3

3. B: **Wǒ zhīdào nín xǐhuan shānshuǐ huà.**
我知道您喜歡山水畫。
I know you like landscape paintings.
- B: **Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huà le yízhāng.**
特別請朋友給您畫了一張。
I asked a friend to paint one especially for you.
- *A: **Nín zhēn shì tài kèqì. Xièxie.**
您真是太客氣。謝謝。
You are really too polite. Thanks.
- A: **Lái, wǒ gěi nimen jièshào jièshào.**
來，我給你們介紹介紹。
Come. I'll introduce the two of you.

Shānshuǐ, “mountains and rivers,” “scenery with hills and water,” is a compound made up of **shān**, “mountain,” and **shuǐ**, “water.” In **shānshuǐ**, **shuǐ** refers to rivers or lakes.

Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huà le yízhāng: Notice that the verb **huà** is followed by the completion marker **le**. For this reason, the sentence means that the painting has been finished. The completed-action sense of **huà le** might be captured by looser translations of the sentence, like “I asked a friend, and he painted one for you” and “I asked a friend, who painted one for you.”

The sentence **Wǒ tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huà yìzhāng**, without **le**, does not indicate whether the painting has been finished or not. The sentence might be used when a speaker thinks that a painting has not yet been finished.

Zhēn shì tài kèqì, “really too polite,” is a variation of **Nín zhēn tài kèqì**. **Shì** is sometimes used simply to show that the subject of a sentence fits the description that follows.

Notes on №4

4. A: **Zhèiwei shì He Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo jīngjìxué.**
 這位是何教授，在台大教經濟學。
 This is Professor Hollins, who teaches economics at **Táiwān** University.
- A: **Hé Jiàoshòu, zhèiwei shì Huáng Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.**
 何教授，這位是黃科長，在臺灣銀行工作。
 Professor Hollins, this is Section Chief **Huáng**, who works at the Bank of **Táiwān**.
- A: **Zhèiwei shì Huáng Tàitai.**
 這位是黃太太。
 This is Mrs. **Huáng**.

Jiàoshòu, “professor”: The first syllable in this word means “teaching.” Notice that the tone on **jiào** is different from the tone on the verb “to teach,” **jiāo**.

Táidà is the abbreviation for **Táiwān Dàxué**, “**Táiwān** University.”

Zhèiwei shì Huáng Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò looks like a run-on sentence, with the pronoun **tā** dropped from the second part of the sentence. In Chinese, this is a perfectly good way to add a second clause to a sentence. To characterize a person or thing just identified, the Chinese simply attach a descriptive sentence and omit the subject. You have already learned this pattern: **Wángfūjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà**. Here are some additional examples:

Tā tàitai shì Riběn rén, xiànzài zài Shànghǎi.

他太太是日本人，現在在上海。

His wife is Japanese; she is in Shanghai now.

Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou xìng Wú, zài Dōnghǎi Dàxué jiāo shū, míngnián xiǎng dào Měiguó qù.

我有一個朋友姓吾，在東海大學教書明年想到美國去。

I have a friend named **Wú** who teaches at **Dōnghǎi** University. He is planning to go to America next year.

Notes on №5

5. B: **Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.**
 久仰，久仰。
 Glad to meet you.
- B: **Nín lái le duó jiǔ le?**
 您來了多久了？

- How long have you been here?
 C: Jiǔyǎng. Wǒ gāng lái liǎngge yuè.
 久仰。我剛來兩個月。
 Glad to meet you. It has been only two months since I came.

Jiǔyǎng means, literally, “I have looked up to you for a long time” or “I have looked forward to meeting you.” It is used when meeting someone of higher status. Because jiǔyǎng implies a status difference, the expression is not often used in the PRC.

Gāng, “only just”: you have learned the sentence Wǒ lái liǎngge yuè le, “I have been here two months now.” In the last sentence of exchange 5, notice that no le is needed. The focus has shifted from the coming to the shortness of the period; that is, the focus is on gāng.

Notes on №6

6. C: Háiyǒu hěnduō bùshúxide dìfang.
 還有很多不熟悉的地方。
 There is still much I’m not familiar with.
 C: Yǐhòu hái yào xiàng nín qǐngjiào.
 以後還要向您請教。
 Later I’ll need to request more advice from you.

Shóuxi, “to be familiar [with the details of something],” is also pronounced shúxi.

Dìfang means “areas,” “aspects” (NOT “places”) in the first sentence of No. 6. Thus shóuxide dìfang means “areas/aspects one is familiar with.”

Xiàng nín qǐngjiào is a polite way of requesting advice from someone—for example, a teacher, an advisor, or a senior colleague. Here, the prepositional verb xiàng means “from.” (You learned xiàng as “towards” in the Directions Module.) Literally, it means “facing.” Less formally, you may also say gēn nín qǐngjiào. Qǐngjiào (literally, “request instruction”) may be reduplicated or used with an object in sentences like the following:

Wǒ yào gēn nín qǐngjiào yíjiàn shì.

我要跟您請教一件事。

I would like to consult with you about something.

Wǒ yào gēn nín qǐngjiào qǐngjiào.

我要跟您請教請教。

I would like to consult with you about something.

Yǐhòu hái yào...: In this sentence, hái means “still more,” or “additionally.”

Notes on №7

7. B: Náli, náli.
 哪裏，哪裏。
 Not at all, not at all.
 B: Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō jiànmiàn.

希望以後有機會多見面。

I hope that in the future we will have an opportunity to meet more.

Note on №7

The adjectival verb **duō**, “to be much,” “to be many,” is used in No. 7 as an adverb meaning “much,” “more.” **Shǎo** may be used in the same way.

Kāfēi bù néng duō hē.

咖啡不能多喝。

One must not drink too much coffee.

Nǐ duō chī diǎnr ba.

你多吃點兒吧。

Eat a little more.

Tā duō zhù le liǎng tiān.

他多住了兩天。

He stayed two days longer.

Wǒ shǎo mǎi le yì zhāng piào.

我少買了一張票。

I bought one ticket too few. (more literally, “I under-bought by one ticket.”)

Tā shuō tā yào shǎo chī.

他說他要少吃。

He says he wants to eat less (cut down on eating).

Vocabulary booster

8. fāngfǎ
方法
method, way, means
9. fǎzi
法子
method, way
10. huà
畫兒
painting (Běijīng pronunciation)
11. qǐng zuò
請坐
please sit down
12. shèhuìxué
社會學
sociology

13. túshūguǎn
圖書館
library
14. zuò
坐
to sit

Here are a few sentences illustrating some of the words:

Nǐde shèhuìxué xuéde zhènmehǎo! Nǐ yòng shénme fāngfǎ niànde?

你的社會學學得怎麼好！你用什麼方法念得？

You learned your sociology so well! How do you study it?

Měitiān zài túshūguǎn sìge zhōngtóu.

每天在圖書館四個鐘頭。

I spend four hours in the library everyday.

Ài! Wǒ méiyǒu fǎzi zài túshūguǎn zuò sìge zhōngtóu.

唉！我沒有法子在圖書館坐四個鐘頭。

Boy! There's no way I can sit in the library for four hours.

Vocabulary Booster

Opposites

安靜	ānjìng	to be peaceful
長	cháng	to be long
聰明	cōngmíng	to be intelligent, to be bright
大	dà	to be large
到達	dàodá	to arrive, to reach
對	duì	to be correct
乾淨	gānjìng (gānjīng)	to be clean
高	gāo	to be tall
高興	gāoxìng	to be happy
工作	gōngzuò	to work
好	hǎo	to be good, to be well
簡單	jiǎndān	to be simple
健康	jiànkāng	to be healthy
寬	kuān	to be wide, to be broad
來	lái	to come
累	lèi	to be tired

冷	lěng	to be cold
涼快	liángkuai	to be cool
滿	mǎn	to be full
慢	màn	to be slow
忙	máng	to be busy
年輕	niánqīng	to be young
便宜	piányi	to be inexpensive, to be cheap
漂亮	piàoliang	to be beautiful
強	qiáng	to be strong
容易	róngyi	to be easy
生	shēng	to be born
甜	tián	to be sweet
停	tíng	to stop, to halt
推	tuī	to push
遠	yuǎn	to be far
早	zǎo	to be early
真	zhēn	to be true, to be real, to be genuine
熱鬧	rènao	to be lively, to be bustling, to be noisy
短	duǎn	to be short
笨	bèn	to be stupid, to be foolish
小	xiǎo	to be small
離開	líkāi	to leave
錯	cuò	to make a mistake, to be wrong
髒	zāng	to be dirty
矮	ǎi	to be short (of stature)
難過	nánguò	to feel sorry, to feel bad, to be grieved
休息	xiūxi	to rest, to relax
壞	huài	to be bad
複雜	fùzá (fūzá)	to be complicated, to be complex
有病	yǒu bìng	to be ill, to be sick
窄	zhǎi	to be narrow
去	qù	to go
有精神	yǒu jīngshen	to be lively, to be spirited, to be vigorous

热	rè	to be hot
暖和	nuǎnhuo	to be warm
空	kōng	to be vacant, to be empty
快	kuài	to be fast
闲	xián	to be idle, to be unoccupied
老	lǎo	to be old (in years)
贵	guì	to be expensive
难看	nánkàn	to be ugly
弱	ruò	to be weak
难	nán	to be difficult
死	sǐ	to die
苦	kǔ	to be bitter
走	zǒu	to go, to walk
拉	lā	to pull
近	jìn	to be near
晚	wǎn	to be late
假	jiǎ	to be false, to be fake, to be artificial

Drills

Transformation Drill

1. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta huà yìzhāng huà.
我想请他画一张画儿。
I'm thinking of asking him to paint a painting.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta huà le yìzhāng huà.
我特别请他画了一张画儿。
I asked him especially to paint a painting.
2. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta chī yí cì Zhōngguó fàn.
我想请他吃一次中国饭。
I'm thinking of inviting him to a Chinese meal.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta chī le yí cì Zhōngguó fàn.
我特别请他吃了一顿中国饭。
I invited him especially to eat a Chinese meal.
3. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta mǎi liǎngzhāng Táiběi dìtú.
我想请他买两张台北地图。
I'm thinking of asking him to buy two maps of Taipei.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta mǎi liǎngzhāng Táiběi dìtú.
我特别请他买了两张台北地图。
I asked him especially to buy two maps of Taipei.
4. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta jiāo liǎngnián.
我想请他教两年。
I'm thinking of asking him to teach for two years.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta jiāo le liǎngnián.
我特别请他教了两年。
I asked him especially to teach for two years.
5. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta huà yìzhāng Zhōngguó huà.
我想请他画一张中国画儿。

I'm thinking of asking him to draw a Chinese painting.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta huà le yìzhāng Zhōngguó huà.

我特别请他画了一张中国画儿。

I asked him especially to draw a Chinese painting.

6. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta lái yí cì.

我想请他来一次。

I'm thinking of asking him to come once.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta lái le yí cì.

我特别请他来了一次。

I especially invited him here once.

7. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta kàn yí cì diànyǐng.

我想请他看一次电影。

I'm thinking of inviting him to a movie.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta kàn le yí cì diànyǐng.

我特别请他看了一次电影。

I asked him especially to watch the movie once.

Combination Drill

1. Tā shì Hé Jiàoshòu. Tā zài Táidà jiāo jīngjìxué.

他是何教授。他在台大教经济学。

He is Professor Hé. He teaches economics at Táiwān University.

Zhèiwèi shì Hé Jiàozhòu, zài Táidà jiāo jīngjìxué.

这位是何教授，在台大教经济学。

This is Professor Hé, who teaches economics at Táiwān University.

2. Tā shì Wáng Kēzhǎng. Tā zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò.

她是王科长。她在外交部工作。

She is Section Chief Wáng. She works for the Foreign Office.

Zhèiwèi shì Wáng Kēzhǎng, zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò.

这位是王科长，在外交部工作。

This is Section Chief Wáng, who works for the Foreign Office.

3. Tā shì Shěn Shàoxiào. Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

他是沈少校。他在武官处工作。

He is Major Shěn. He works for the Military Attaché.

Zhèiwèi shì Shěn Shàoxiào, zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

这位是沈少校，在武官处工作。

This is Major Shěn, who works for the Military Attaché.

4. Tā shì Lín Jiàoshòu. Tā zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué jiāo shū.

他是林教授。他在加州大学教书。

He is Professor Lín. He teaches at the University of California.

Zhèiwèi shì Lín Jiàoshòu, zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué jiāo shū.

这位是林教授，在加州大学教书。

This is Professor Lín, who teaches at the University of California.

5. Tā shì Lǚ Kēzhǎng. Tā zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.

他是吕科长。他在台湾银行工作。

He is Section Chief Lǚ. He works in Taiwan Bank.

Zhèiwèi shì Lǚ Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.

这位是吕科长，在台湾银行工作。

This is Section Chief **Lǚ**, who works in Taiwan Bank.

6. **Tā shì Liú Xiǎojiě. Tā zài Táidà niàn shū.**

她是刘小姐。她在台大念书。

He is Miss **Liú**. She is studying at National Taiwan University.

Zhèwèi shì Liú Xiǎojiě, zài Táidà niàn shū.

这位是刘小姐，在台大念书。

This is Miss **Liú**, who is studying at National Taiwan University.

7. **Tā shì Hán Jiàoshòu. Tā zài Táidà jiāo zhèngzhìxué.**

他是韩教授。他在台大教政治学。

He is Professor **Hán**. He teaches political science at National Taiwan University.

Zhèwèi shì Hán Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo zhèngzhìxué.

这位是韩教授，在台大教政治学。

This is Professor **Hán**, who teaches political science at National Taiwan University.

Transformation Drill

1. Yǒu hěn duō dìfāng wǒ bù shóuxi.

有很多地方我不熟悉。

There is much I'm not familiar with.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō bù shóuxide dìfāng.

我还有很多不熟悉的地方。

There is still much I'm not familiar with.

2. Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō rén bù hē chá.

在这儿，有很多人喝茶。

There are many people here who don't drink tea.

Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō bù hē cháde rén.

在这儿，有很多不喝茶的人。

There are many non-tea drinking people here.

3. Yǒu hěn duō dìfāng wǒ tīngbudǒng.

有很多地方我听不懂。

There were a lot of parts I don't understand.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō tīngbudǒngde dìfāng.

我还有很多听不懂的地方。

There is still a lot I don't understand.

4. Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō rén bú kàn bào.

在这儿，有很多人看报。

There are a lot of people here who don't read the newspaper.

Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō bú kàn bàode rén.

在这儿，有很多不看报。

Here, there are a lot of people who don't read the newspaper.

5. Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō rén bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.

在这儿，有很多人不会说中国话。

Here, there are many people who do not speak Chinese.

Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huàde rén.

在这儿，有很多不会说中国话的人。

Here, there are many people who do not speak Chinese.

6. Yǒu hěn duō dìfāng wǒ bú huì zuò.

有很多地方我不会做。

There are a lot of parts I can't do.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō bú huì zuòde dìfāng.

我还有很多不会做的地方。

There are still a lot of parts I can't do.

7. Yǒu hěn duō dìfāng wǒ kànbudǒng.

有很多地方我看不懂。

There are many parts I can't read.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō kànbudǒngde dìfāng.

我还有很多我看不懂的地方。

There are still a lot of parts I can't read.

Transformation Drill

1. Wǒmen yǐhòu jiànmiànde jīhuì hěn duō.

我们以后见面的机会很多。

We will have many more opportunities to meet in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō jiànmiàn.

希望以后有机会多见面。

I hope that in the future we'll have an opportunity to meet more.

2. Wǒ yǐhòu xiàng nín qǐngjiàode jīhuì hěn duō.

我以后向您请教的机会很多。

I'll have many more opportunities to ask you for advice in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō xiàng nín qǐngjiào.

希望以后有机会多向您请教。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to ask you for more advice.

3. Wǒmen yǐhòu shuō Zhōngguó huàde jīhuì hěn duō.

我们以后说中国话的机会很多。

We'll have many more opportunities to speak Chinese in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō shuō Zhōngguó huà.

希望以后有机会多说中国话。

I hope that in the future I hope to have the opportunity to speak Chinese more often.

4. Wǒ yǐhòu xué Zhōngwénde jīhuì hěn duō.

我以后学中文的机会很多。

I'll have many more opportunities to learn Chinese in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō xué Zhōngwén.

希望以后有机会多学中文。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to learn more Chinese.

5. Wǒmen yǐhòu lái de jīhuì hěn duō.

我们以后的机会很多。

We'll have many more chances to come in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō lái.

希望以后有机会多来。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to come more often.

6. Wǒmen yǐhòu zài yìqǐde jīhuì hěn duō.

我们以后在一起的机会很多。

We'll have many more opportunities to be together in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō zài yìqǐ.

希望以后有机会多在一起。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to spend more time together.

7. Wǒ yǐhòu lǚxíngde jīhuì hěn duō.

我以后旅行的机会很多。

I'll have many more opportunities to travel in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō lǚxíng.

希望以后有机会多旅行。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to travel more.

Expansion Drill

1. Huáng Kēzhǎng, huānyíng, huānyíng.

黄科长，欢迎欢迎。

Section Chief Huáng, welcome, welcome.

Cue

zuò

坐

Huáng Kēzhǎng, huānyíng, huānyíng. Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò.

黄科长，欢迎欢迎。请进，请进来坐。

Section Chief Huáng, welcome, welcome. Please come in and sit down.

2. Wáng Xiǎojiě, nín hǎo?

王小姐，您好？

Miss Wáng, how are you?

Cue

zuòzuò

坐坐

Wáng Xiǎojiě, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuòzuò.

王小姐，您好？请进，请进来坐坐。

Miss Wáng, how are you? Please come in, please come in and have a seat.

3. Lǐ Xiānsheng, nín hǎo?

李先生，您好？

Mr. Lǐ, how are you?

Cue

hē yìdiǎn chá

喝一点茶

Lǐ Xiānsheng, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai hē yìdiǎn chá.

李先生，您好？请进，请进来喝一点茶。

Mr. Lǐ, how are you? Please come in, please come in and have some tea.

4. Wú Kēzhǎng, nín hǎo?

吾科长，您好？

Chief Wú, how are you?

Cue

zuò

坐

Wú Kēzhǎng, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò.

吾科长，您好？请进，请进来坐。

Chief Wú, how are you? Please come in, please come in and sit down.

5. Zhào Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng.

赵太太，欢迎欢迎。

Mrs. Zhào, welcome, welcome.

Cue

zuò

坐

Zhào Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng. Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò.

赵太太，欢迎欢迎请进，请进来坐。

Mrs. Zhào, welcome, welcome. Please come in and sit down.

6. Zhāng Xiānsheng, Zhāng Tàitai, nín hǎo?

张先生，张太太，您好？

Mr. Zhāng, Mrs. Zhāng, how are you?

Cue

zuò yihuǐr

坐一会儿

Zhāng Xiānsheng, Zhāng Tàitai, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò yihuǐr.

张先生，张太太，您好？请进，请进来坐一会儿。

Mr. Zhāng, Mrs. Zhāng, how are you? Please come in and sit down for a while.

7. Qián Kēzhǎng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn.

干科长，好久不见。

Chief Qián, long time no see.

Cue

zuòzuo

坐坐

Qián Kēzhǎng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlái zuòzuò.

干科长，好久不见。请进，请进来坐坐坐。

Chief Qián, long time no see. Please come in, please come in and sit down.

Unit 5

References

Reference List

1. B: Wài.
喂
Hello.

A: Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma?
喂，是外交部嗎？
Hello. Is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?

A: Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà.
我要找林司長說話。
I want to speak with Department Chief Lín.
2. B: Nín shì nǎr a?
您是哪兒？
Who is this?

A: Wǒ xìng Lèkèláiěr. Wǒ shì Fǎguó Dàshìguǎnde Shāngwù Jīngjìguān.
我姓勒克萊爾。我是法國大使館的商務經濟官。
My name is Leclair. I am the Commercial/Economics Officer from the French Embassy.

B: Nín děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nín kànkàn tā zài bù zài.
您等一等，我給您看看他在不在。
Wait a moment. I'll see whether he is here or not.
3. B: Wài, tā zhèihuǐr bú zài. Nín yào liú ge huà ma?
喂，他這會兒不在。您要留個話兒嗎？
Hello. He is not here at the moment. Would you like to leave a message?

A: Láojià, tā huílai de shíhòu, nín qǐng ta gěi wǒ dǎ ge diànhuà.
勞駕，他回來的時候，您請他給我打個電話。
When he comes back, please ask him to give me a phone call.
4. B: Hǎo, qǐng nín bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎ gào sòng wǒ. Wǒ xiěxià lái.
好，請您把您的電話號兒告訴我，我寫下來。
All right. Please tell me your phone number. I'll write it down.

A: Wǒ de diànhuà shì wǔ èr yāo sān sān yāo.
我的电话是五二幺三三幺
My phone number is 521-331.
5. C: Duì bu qǐ, nǐ gāngcǎi géi wǒ dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài.

- 對不起。你剛才給我打電話，我不在。
I'm sorry. When you called me just now, I wasn't in.
- C: Nǐ yǒu shì ma?
你有事嗎？
Can I help you with something?
- A: Shì a! Wǒ nàitiān gēn nín yuēhǎole míngtiān shídiǎn dào nín bàngōngshì qu tán-tán.
是啊！我那天跟您約好了明天十點到您辦公室去談談。
Yes, you can. The other day I made an appointment with you to go to your office at ten o'clock tomorrow for a talk.
6. A: Yīnwei míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ yǒu yǐjiàn yào jǐnde shì, suǒyǐ xiǎng wèn nín wǒmen néng bu néng gǎi dào xiàwǔ.
因為明天早上我有要緊的事，所以想問您我們能不能改到下午。
Because I have an urgent business matter tomorrow morning, I want to ask you whether we can change it [the appointment] to the afternoon.
- *C: Xiàwǔ shénme shíhou?
下午什麼時候？
What time in the afternoon?
- A: Nín kàn xiàwǔ sān-sidiǎn zěnmeyàng? Duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?
您看下午三四點怎麼樣？對您方便不方便？
What do you think of three or four in the afternoon? Is that convenient for you?
- C: Sidiǎn bǐ sāndiǎn hǎo. Wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng děi kāi huì.
四點比三點好。我三點中得開會。
Four would be better than three. I have to attend a meeting at three o'clock.
- A: Hǎo ba. Nà míngtiān sidiǎn zhōng jiàn.
好吧。那明天四點鐘見。
All right. Well then, see you at four o'clock tomorrow.
- C: Hǎo, wǒ sidiǎn zhōng děng nǐ.
好，我四點鐘等你。
All right. I'll wait for you at four o'clock.
7. hái shì
還是
still
8. wàiguó
外國
foreign, abroad
9. wàiguó rén
外國人
foreigner (non-Chinese)
10. wūzi (yǐjiān)

11.	屋子 (一間)
	room
	yāo
	么
	one (telephone pronunciation)

Vocabulary

bǎ	把	(prepositional verb which indicates the direct object)
bàngōngshì	辦公室	office
gǎi	改	to change
gǎi dào	改到	to change to
gāngcái	剛才	just now, a short time ago
háishi	還是	still
hàomǎ(r)	號碼(兒)	number
jīngjìguān	經濟官	economics officer
liú	留	to leave, to keep, to save
liú(ge)huà(r)	留(個)話(兒)	to leave a message
nèitiān	那天	the other day
shāngwù	商務	commercial business
shāngwùguān	商務官	commercial officer
wàiguó	外國	foreign, abroad
wàiguó rén	外國人	foreigner (non-Chinese)
Wàijiāobù	外交部	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
wūzi (yìjiān)	屋子 (一間)	room
xiěxiàláí	寫下來	to write down
yāo	幺	one (telephone pronunciation)
yàoǐn	要緊	to be important, to be urgent
yuēhǎole	約好了	to have (successfully) made arrangements, to have made an appointment
zhèihuìr	這會兒	this moment, at the moment (Běijīng)
chūtǔ wénwù zhǎnlǎn	出土文物展覽	exhibition of archaeological finds
dǎ dao	打到	to make a phone call to
dàibiǎotuán	代表團	delegation
gǎnbu huí lái	赶不回来	can't make it back in time
jiàoyuán	教員	teacher
jīnglǐ	經理	manager
qīn zì	親自	personally, privately
tuánzhǎng	團長	head of the delegation
zhǔrèn	主任	director

zìjǐ

自己

oneself (“myself,” “yourself,” etc.)

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. B: Wài.
喂
Hello.
- A: Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma?
喂，是外交部嗎？
Hello. Is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?
- A: Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà.
我要找林司長說話。
I want to speak with Department Chief Lín.

Wài jiāobù: **Wàijiāo** is the word for “diplomacy” (more literally, “foreign relations”). **Bù** designates an organizational unit; in speaking of the Chinese government, **bù** is translated as “ministry.”

Note

Bù is also used for a “department” of the U.S. government: **Nèizhèngbù**, “Department of the Interior”

The head of a **bù** is a **bùzhǎng**, “minister.”

Wài-, “foreign,” is used in terms such as **wàiguó**, “overseas” (literally, “foreign country”) and **wàiguó rén**, “foreigner” (most frequently referring to a person from a non-Asian country). Literally, **wài-** means “outside,” as in **wàimian**.

Yào zhǎo...shuō huà means, literally, “I would like to look for . . . to speak [with him.]”

Telephone conversations: Telephone courtesy in the United States requires that a person identify himself before beginning a conversation. In China, however, it is normal for the caller to ask “Who is this?” and for the person who answers the phone to inquire “Who is calling?”

Notes on №2

2. B: Nín shì nǎr a?
您是哪兒？
Who is this?
- A: Wǒ xìng Lèkèláiěr. Wǒ shì Fǎguó Dàshìguǎnde Shāngwù Jīngjìguān.
我姓勒克萊爾。我是法國大使館的商務經濟官。
My name is Leclair. I am the Commercial/Economics Officer from the French Embassy.
- B: Nín děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nín kànkàn tā zài bu zài.
您等一等，我給您看看他在不在。
Wait a moment. I’ll see whether he is here or not.

Nín shì nǎr a? is one polite way to ask who is calling. *Nǎr* asks for the name of the office or organization which the caller represents. You may also say *Nǐ nǎr a?* To ask for the caller's name, use *Qǐngwèn nǐ shì...?* or *Qǐngwèn nǐ guìxìng?*

Fǎguo: In the PRC, the word for “France” usually has a low tone instead of a falling tone (*Fàguo*).

The syllable *-guān* means “government official,” “officer,” or “officeholder.”

Tā zài bu zài: *Zài* means “to be present” here. With this meaning, *zài* does not have to be followed by a place word.

Notes on №3

3. B: *Wài, tā zhèihuǐr bú zài. Nín yào liú ge huàr ma?*
 喂，他這會兒不在。您要留個話兒嗎？
 Hello. He is not here at the moment. Would you like to leave a message?
- A: *Láojià, tā huílai de shíhou, nín qǐng ta gěi wǒ dǎ ge diànhuà.*
 勞駕，他回來的時候，您請他給我打個電話。
 When he comes back, please ask him to give me a phone call.

Zhèihuǐr is a colloquial word for “now,” “at the moment.” The word is made up of *zhè* plus *yihuǐr*. Its position preceding the verb shows that it refers to a point in time.

Liú ge huàr: *Liú* means “to leave [something/someone!] behind.” *Huàr*, translated in exchange 3 as “message,” is the word for “speech.” Directly following a verb (in this case, *liú*), the *yī* of unstressed *yige* may be omitted.

Notes on №4

4. B: *Hǎo, qǐng nín bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎr gào sòng wǒ. Wǒ xiěxiàlái.*
 好，請您把您的電話號兒告訴我，我寫下來。
 All right. Please tell me your phone number. I'll write it down.
- A: *Wǒ de diànhuà shì wǔ èr yāo-sān sān yāo.*
 My phone number is 521-331.

Hàomǎr is used for “number” in speaking of identification numbers such as a passport number. (*Shù-mu*, “number,” expresses an amount.)

Yāo is used in *Běijīng* for giving room numbers and telephone numbers whenever those numbers are given orally.

Xiěxiàlái is a compound verb which is formed like *náxiàlái*. However, while *náxiàlái* literally means “to bring down and towards the speaker,” *xiěxiàlái* does NOT mean “to write in a downward direction towards the speaker.” The compound *xiěxiàlái* corresponds to the English idiom “to write down.”

Qǐng nín bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎr gào sòng wǒ illustrates some of the rules concerning the use of the prepositional verb *bǎ*. (Read the Transportation Module notes on *bǎ*.)

Bǎ is a prepositional verb used to bring the direct object of a sentence to a position preceding the main verb. To do so has certain effects on the meaning of a sentence. There are reasons why *bǎ* must be used, why it may not be used, and why it is optional in different kinds of sentences.

In the first sentence of exchange 4, the use of the **bǎ** construction is optional. you may also say **Qǐng nǐ gào sòng wǒ nín de diàn huà hào mǎ**. The sentence fulfills the requirements for the optional use of **bǎ** but has none of the features which make the use of **bǎ** a necessity. Let's look more closely at these different requirements and features.

a. What conditions are necessary for the use of **bǎ**?

(1) The object of **bǎ** must be acted on. In other words, the action must be performed on the object of **bǎ**. In the first sentence of exchange 4, **nín de diàn huà hào mǎ** undergoes the action **gào sòng**. More obvious examples are#

<p>Tā bǎ dì tú ná chū lái le. 他把地圖拿出來了。 He took out the map. (MAP UNDERGOES BEING TAKEN OUT)</p>
<p>Tā bǎ tā de chē mài le. 他把他的車賣了。 He sold his car. (CAR UNDERGOES BEING SOLD)</p>
<p>Tā bǎ nèi ge Zhōngguó zì xiě zài hēi bǎn shàng le. 他把那個中國字寫在黑板上了# He wrote that Chinese character on the chalkboard. (CHINESE CHARACTER UNDERGOES BEING WRITTEN ON THE BOARD)</p>

UNDERGOER OF THE ACTION means that the object is influenced by the action in some way. In “I saw Mr. **Wáng** yesterday,” Mr. **Wáng** is not considered to be the under-goer of the action.

(2) The verb must be an action verb (such as **gào sòng** in exchange 4). **Bǎ** is not used with state and process verbs. For example, you may not use **bǎ** with **yǒu**, **zhī dao**, **xǐ huan**, **ài**, **xiǎng**, **hui**, or **dòng**.

(3) The object of **bǎ** must refer to something specific (such as **nín de diàn huà hào mǎ** in exchange 4): which telephone number? your telephone number (The questioner knows which number he is referring to, even though he does not know what the number is.) Often the object of **bǎ** must be translated into English with the definite article “the”:

<p>Qǐng nǐ bǎ huā píng gěi wǒ. 請你把花瓶給我。 Please give me the vase. (NOT “a vase”)</p>
<p>Tā bǎ liǎng zhāng piào gěi wǒ le. 他把兩張票給我了。 He gave me the two tickets. (NOT “[any] two tickets”)</p>

(4) The verb phrase must be complex. Here are examples of the ways in which a verb phrase can be made complex so that **bǎ** may be used:

<p>ASPECT MARKER Tā bǎ tā de chē zi mài le. 他把他的車子賣了。 He sold his car.</p>
--

<p>REDUPLICATED VERB Qǐng nǐ bǎ piào huàn huan.</p>
--

REDUPLICATED VERB

請你把票換換。

Please exchange the tickets.

COMPOUND VERB

Tā bǎ wǒde dìzhǐ xiěxiàlai le.

他把我的地址寫下來了。

He wrote down my address.

Nǐ bǎ xíngli náshàng chē qu ba.

你把行李拿上車去吧。

Take the baggage onto the train.

Wǒmen zuótiān yǐjīng bǎ zhèjiàn shì shuōhǎo le.

我們把昨天已經把這件事說好了。

We agreed on this matter yesterday.

Wǒ xiān bǎ zhèige xiěwán zài zǒu.

我先把這個寫完再走。

I will finish writing this first and then leave.

Nǐ bǎ wǒde míngzi xiěcuò le.

你把我的名字寫錯了。

You wrote my name wrong.

MANNER EXPRESSION AFTER THE VERB

Nǐ bǎ zhèige zì xiěde tài dà le.

你把這個字寫得太大了。

You wrote this character too large.

Tā bǎ zhèijiàn shì shuōde hěn qīngchū.

他把這件事事說得很清楚。

He talked very clearly about this.

PREPOSITIONAL VERB PHRASE AFTER THE VERB

bǎ píjiǔ fàng zài zhuōzishang.

把啤酒放在桌子上，

Put the beer on the table.

Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zài nàibiān děng nín.

我把車停在那邊等您、

I will park the car over there and wait for you.

INDIRECT OBJECT AFTER THE VERB

Lǐ Xiānsheng bǎ zìdiǎn gěi xuésheng le.

李先生把字典給學生了。

Mr. Lǐ has given the dictionaries to the students.

NUMBER PLUS COUNTER AFTER THE VERB

Qǐng nǐ zài bǎ tāde diànhuà hàomǎr niàn yíci.

請你再把他的電話號碼兒念一次。

Please read his telephone number aloud once more.

Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèige kàn yíxià.

請你把這個看一下。

Please take a look at this. (OR “Please read this over.”)

In the first sentence of exchange 4, the verb phrase is made complex by having an indirect object after the verb: *bǎ nǐnde diànhuà hàomǎr gào song wǒ*.

b. When MUST *bǎ* be used?

The examples above which require the use of *bǎ* are those with a prepositional verb phrase after the verb, those with a manner expression after the verb, and most of the sentences under the heading “Compound Verb.”

In these examples, the object may not be placed between the verb and the element which follows.

c. When can't *bǎ* be used?

Bǎ cannot normally be used in a sentence if the verb is not an action verb, if the verb describes perception (like *kànjian* and *tīngjian*), if the object is not the under-goer of the action, if the object is indefinite or if the verb is a simple verb. Here are some examples of sentences in which *bǎ* cannot be used:

INDEFINITE OBJECT

Wǒ mǎile yíge shōuyīnjī.

我買了一個收音機。

I bought a radio.

PERCEPTION VERB [*kànjian*]; OBJECT DOES NOT UNDERGO ACTION

Wǒ kànjian ta le.

我看見他了。

I saw him.

SIMPLE VERB

Wǒ xiǎng kàn zhèběn shū.

我想看這本書。

I would like to read this book.

***yǒu* NOT ACTION VERB**

Wǒ yǒu hěn duō wàiguó péngyou.

我有很多外國朋友。

I have a lot of foreign friends.

***zhīdao* NOT ACTION VERB**

Wǒ zhīdao zhèjiàn shì.

我知道這件事。

zhīdao NOT ACTION VERB

I know of this matter.

d. What is the motivation for using **bǎ**?

Bǎ is used when the verb phrase gives more new important information than the object does. The Chinese prefer to place that important verb phrase in final position in a sentence, where the phrase will be prominent.

Bǎ performs the function of taking the object out of the way (to the beginning of a sentence) and allowing the verb phrase to have its full impact.

e. To make a **bǎ** sentence negative, place the negative adverb in front of **bǎ** (NOT in front of the main verb).

Tā méi bǎ zhuōzi bānchūqu.

他沒把桌子搬出去。

He did not move the table out.

Nǐ bù bǎ ròu

Note

ròu, “meat”

fàng zài bīngxiānglǐ zěnmē xíng?

你不把肉放在冰箱裏怎麼行。

How can it do for you not to put the meat in the refrigerator? (How can you not put the meat in the refrigerator?)

Notes on №5

5. C: Duibuqǐ, nǐ gāngcǎi gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài.
對不起。你剛才給我打電話，我不在。
I'm sorry. When you called me just now, I wasn't in.
- C: Nǐ yǒu shì ma?
你有事嗎？
Can I help you with something?
- A: Shì a! Wǒ nàitiān gēn nín yuēhǎole míngtiān shídiǎn dào nín bàngōngshì qu tán. tán.
是啊！我那天跟您約好了明天十點到您辦公室去談談。
Yes, you can. The other day I made an appointment with you to go to your office at ten o'clock tomorrow for a talk.

Gāngcǎi means “just now,” “a short time ago.” It may, like other time words, either precede or follow the subject of a sentence.

Tā gāngcǎi gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà.

他剛才給我打電話了。

He called me a short time ago. le.

Gāngcái tā gěi wo dǎ diànhuà le.

剛才他給我打電話了。

He called me a short time ago. le.

The one-syllable adverb **gāng**, “just,” always follows the subject of a sentence.

Tā gāng gěi wo dǎ diànhuà.

他剛給我打電話。

He just called me.

Nǐ gāngcái gěi wo dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài, literally, “You called me just now, I wasn’t in”: To the first clause (**Nǐ gāngcái gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà**), you could add **-de shìhou**, “when.” Even without **-de shìhou**, the relationship between the two clauses is still very close. Colloquially, no pause is needed between them. Here is a similar sentence:

Gāngcái wǒ qù zhǎo nǐ, nǐ bú zài.

剛才我去找你，你不在。

I just went to look for you, but you weren’t there.

Nèitiān literally means “that day.” It is the Chinese equivalent of “the other day.”

Yuēhǎo is a compound verb of result: **yuē**, “to arrange a meeting,” “to make an appointment,” plus **hǎo**, “successfully complete.”

Gēn means “with” in the last sentence of exchange 5.

Bàngōngshì: **Bàngōng** (literally, “manage work”) is frequently used for “do work in an office.” A **bàngōngshì** is a room where office work is done, or an “office.”

Notes on №6

6. A: **Yīnwei míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ yǒu yíjiàn yàojǐnde shì, suóyì xiǎng wèn nín wǒmen néng bu néng gǎi dào xiàwǔ.**
因為明天早上我有要緊的事，所以想問您我們能不能改到下午。
Because I have an urgent business matter tomorrow morning, I want to ask you whether we can change it [the appointment] to the afternoon.
- *C: **Xiàwǔ shénme shíhou?**
下午什麼時候？
What time in the afternoon?
- A: **Nín kàn xiàwǔ sān-sìdiǎn zěnmeyàng? Duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?**
您看下午三四點怎麼樣？對您方便不方便？
What do you think of three or four in the afternoon? Is that convenient for you?
- C: **Sìdiǎn bǐ sāndiǎn hǎo. Wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng děi kāi huì.**
四點比三點好。我三點中得開會。
Four would be better than three. I have to attend a meeting at three o’clock.
- A: **Hǎo ba. Nà míngtiān sìdiǎn zhōng jiàn.**

好吧。那明天四點鐘見。

All right. Well then, see you at four o'clock tomorrow.

C: Hǎo, wǒ sidiǎn zhōng děng nǐ.

好，我四點鐘等你。

All right. I'll wait for you at four o'clock.

Yàojǐn means “to be urgent,” “to be important.”

Yīnwei...suóyì: When the first part of an English sentence begins with the word “because,” it is usually considered redundant to begin the second part with “therefore.” Thus the Chinese word **suóyì**, “therefore,” in the first sentence of exchange 6, is not translated into English. In Chinese, however, **suóyì** is commonly used after a clause beginning with **yīnwei**, “because.”

The verbs **gǎi** and **huàn** are both frequently translated as “to change.” **Gǎi** means “change” in the sense of “alter,” and **huàn** means “change” in the sense of “exchange.”

Gǎi dào xiàwǔ, “change (it) to the afternoon”: In this phrase, the prepositional verb **dào** and its object **xiàwǔ** do not precede the verb; they follow the verb. A **dào**, “to,” phrase which precedes the main verb in a sentence can be a scene setter, that is, you go “to” a place and the action takes place there. Following the main verb in a sentence, a **dào** phrase can indicate where something ends up as a result of the action. In the first sentence of exchange 6, the appointment will END UP in the afternoon. Here are some examples of **dào** phrases:

Tā dào cài shì chǎng mǎi cài qù le.

他到菜市場買菜去了。

He went to the market to buy groceries. (SCENE SETTER)

Wǒ gāngcái dào wǔ lóu zhǎo chén tàitai qù le.

我剛才到五樓找陳太太去了。

Just now I went to the fifth floor to look for Mrs. Chen. (SCENE SETTER)

Tā pǎo dào shān shàng qù le.

他跑到山上去了。

He ran to the top of the mountain. (“He” ENDS UP ON THE MOUNTAINTOP.)

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

7. **háishi**
還是
still
8. **wàiguó**
外國
foreign, abroad
9. **wàiguó rén**
外國人
foreigner (non-Chinese)
10. **wūzi (yìjiān)**
屋子 (一間)

11. room
yāo
么
one (telephone pronunciation)

Háishi means “still” in the sense of “as before.” It is used in some of the same ways that **hái** is used.

Suīrán tā yǒu shíhòu shuō huà bú kèqì, kěshì wǒ háishi xǐhuan tā.

雖然他有時候說話不客氣，可是我還是喜歡他。

Although he is sometimes impolite in his speech, I still like him.

Wǒ háishi bù dǒng “le” zěnmeyòng.

我還是不懂「le」怎麼用。

I still don't understand how le is used.

Wàiguó rén, “foreigner”: The use of this term is still generally based on race rather than on citizenship. Even Chinese who are American citizens living in the United States often refer to non-Chinese Americans as **wàiguó rén**.

Wūzi, “room”: The counter for **wūzi** is **-jiān**, which literally means “interstice,” “interval,” “space,” “room.”

Drills

Expansion Drill

1. Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma?

喂，是外交部吗？

Hello, is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?

Cue

Lín Sīzhǎng

林司长

Director Lín

Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà.

喂，是外交部吗？我要找林司长说话。

Hello, is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs? I want to speak with Department Chief Lín.

2. Wài, shì Měiguó Wǔguānchù ma?

喂，是美国武官处吗？

Hello, is this the United States Military Attaché's Office?

Cue

Wèi Shǎoxiào

魏少校

Major Wèi

Wài, shì Měiguó Wǔguānchù ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Wèi Shǎoxiào shuō huà.

喂，是美国武官处吗？我要找魏少校说话。

Hello, is this the United States Military Attaché's Office? I want to speak with Major Wèi.

3. Wèi, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma?

喂，是中国银行吗？

Hello, is this Bank of China?

Cue

Lín Kēzhǎng

林科长

Section chief Lín

Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Kēzhǎng shuō huà.

喂，是中国银行吗？我要找说话。

Hello, is this Bank of China? I want to speak with Section chief **Lín**.

4. **Wài, shì Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?**

喂，是北京饭店吗？

Hello, is this the **Běijīng** Hotel?

Cue

Bāoěr Xiānsheng

鲍尔先生

Mr. **Bāoěr**

Wài, shì Běijīng Fàndiàn ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Bāoěr Xiānsheng shuō huà.

喂，是北京饭店吗？我要找鲍尔先生说话。

Hello, is this the Beijing Hotel? I want to speak with Mr. **Bāoěr**.

5. **Wài, shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎn ma?**

喂，是加拿大大使馆吗？

Hello, is this the Canadian embassy?

Cue

Lǐ Xiānsheng

李先生

Mr. **Lǐ**

Wài, shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎn ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Lǐ Xiānsheng shuō huà.

喂，是加拿大大使馆吗？我要找李先生说话。

Hello, is this the Canadian embassy? I want to speak with Mr. **Lǐ**.

6. **Wài, shì Měidàsī ma?**

喂，是美大司吗？

Hello, is this the Department of American and Oceanic Affairs?

Cue

Mèng Tóngzhì

孟通知

Comrade **Mèng**

Wài, shì Měidàsī ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Mèng Tóngzhì shuō huà.

喂，是美大司吗？我要找孟通知说话。

Hello, is this the Department of American and Oceanic Affairs? I want to speak with Comrade **Mèng**.

7. **Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma?**

喂，是中国银行吗？

Hello, is this the Bank of China?

Cue

Zhāngnán Tóngzhì

张楠同志

Comrade Zhāngnán

Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Zhāngnán Tóngzhì shuō huà.

喂，是中国银行吗？我要找张楠同志说话。

Hello, is this the Bank of China? I want to speak with Comrade Zhāngnán.

Expansion Drill

1. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā zài bu zài.

我给你看看他在不在。

I'll see you whether he is here or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā zài bu zài.

请你等一等，我给你看看他在不在。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is here or not.

2. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā máng bu máng.

我给你看看他忙不忙。

I'll see you whether he is busy or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā máng bu máng.

请你等一等，我给你看看他忙不忙。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is busy or not.

3. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

我给你看看他有功夫没有。

I'll see you whether he has free time or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他有功夫没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he has free time or not.

4. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā lái le meiyǒu.

我给你看看他来了没有。

I'll see you whether he is here or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā lái le meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他来了没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is here or not.

5. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā zǒu le meiyǒu.

我给你看看他走了没有。

I'll see you whether he is gone or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā zǒu le meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他走了没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is gone or not.

6. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā huílaile meiyǒu.

我给你看看他回来了没有。

I'll see you whether he is back or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā huílaile meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他回来了没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is back or not.

7. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā huíqùle meiyǒu.

我给你看看他回去了没有。

I'll see you whether he went back or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā huíqùle meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他回去了没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he went back or not.

Substitution Drill

1. Láojià, bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把您的电话号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me his telephone number.

Cue

Wáng Xiānshengde de diànhuà hàomǎr

王先生的电话号码儿

Mr. Wáng's telephone number.

Láojià, bǎ Wáng Xiānshengde diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把王先生的电话号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me Mr. Wáng's telephone number.

2. Láojià, bǎ Wáng Xiānshengde diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把王先生的电话号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me Mr. Wáng's telephone number.

Cue

tāde diànhuà hàomǎr

他的电话号码儿

his phone number

Láojià, bǎ tāde diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的电话号码儿。

Please tell me his phone number.

3. Láojià, bǎ tāde diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的告诉我。

Please tell me his phone number.

Cue

tāde dìzhǐ

他的地址

his address

Láojià, bǎ tāde dìzhǐ gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的地址告诉我。

Please, give me his address.

4. Láojià, bǎ tāde dìzhǐ gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的告诉我。

Please, give me his address.

Cue

tāde bàngōngshìde hàomǎr

他的办公室的号码儿。

his office number

Láojià, bǎ tāde bàngōngshìde hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的办公室的号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me his office number.

5.

Láojià, bǎ tāde bàngōngshìde hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的办公室的号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me his office number.

Cue

tāde dìzhǐ

他的地址

his address

Láojià, bǎ tāde dìzhǐ gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的地址告诉我。

Please, give me his address.

6.

Láojià, bǎ tāde dìzhǐ gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的告诉我。

Please, give me his address.

Cue

nínide diànhuà hàomǎr

您的电话号码儿

your phone number

Láojià, bǎ nínide diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把您的电话号码儿告诉我。

Please give me your phone number.

Response Drill

1. Nǐ xiěxiàláile ma?
你写下来了么？
Have you written it down?

Cue hái méi
还没
not yet

Wǒ hái méi xiěxiàláile.
我还没写下来。
I haven't written it down yet.

2. Nǐ xiěhǎole ma?
你写好了么？
Have you finished writing it?

Cue kuài...le
快。。。了
soon will

Wǒ kuài xiěhǎole.
我快写好了。
I will finish it soon.

3. Nǐ xiěxiàláile ma?
你写下来了么？
Have you written it down?

Cue yǐjīng...le
已经。。。了
already

Wǒ yǐjīng xiěxiàláile.
我已经写下来了。
I already have written it down.

4. Nǐ xiěxiàláile ma?

你写下来了吗？

Have you written it down?

Cue

hái méi

还没

not yet

Wǒ hái méi xiěxiàlái.

我还没写下来了。

I haven't written it down yet.

5. Nǐ xiěxiàlái le ma?

你写下来了吗？

Have you written it down?

Cue

méi

没

did not

Wǒ méi xiěxiàlái.

我没写下来。

I haven't written it down.

6. Nǐ xiěhǎo le ma?

你写好了吗？

Have you finished writing it?

Cue

yǐjīng...le

已经。。。了

already

Wǒ yǐjīng xiěhǎo le.

我已经写好了。

I already have finished write it.

7. Nǐ xiěxiàlái le ma?

你写下来了吗？

Have you written it down?

Cue

le

了

Yes, I did

Wǒ xiěxiàláile.

我写下来了。

I wrote it down.

Response Drill

1. Nǐ gēn tā yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟他约好了

Did you make arrangements with him?

Cue

tā bàngōngshì

他办公室

his office

Gēn tā yuēhǎo le, zài tā bàngōngshì jiàn.

跟他约好了，在他办公室见。

I made arrangements with him to meet at his office.

2. Nǐ gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟王先生约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Mr. Wáng?

Cue

huǒchēzhàn

火车站

rail station

Gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le, zài huǒchēzhàn jiàn.

跟王先生约好了在火车站见。

I made arrangements with Mr. Wáng to meet at the rail station.

3. Nǐ gēn Lǐ Nǚshì yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟李女士约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Mrs. Lǐ?

Cue

wǒde bàngōngshì

我的办公室

my office

Gēn Lǐ Nǚshì yuēhǎo le, zài wǒde bàngōngshì jiàn.

跟李女士约好了在我的办公室见。

I made arrangements with Mrs. Lǐ to meet her at my office.

4. Nǐ gēn Liú Zhǔrén yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟刘主任约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Liú Zhǔrēn?

Cue

Wàijiāobù

外交部

foreign ministry

Gēn Liú Zhǔrēn yuēhǎo le, zài Wàijiāobù jiàn.

跟刘主任约好了在外交部见。

I made arrangements with Liú Zhǔrēn to meet him at the foreign ministry.

5. Nǐ gēn Bāo Jiàoshòu yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟鲍教授约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Bāo Jiàoshòu?

Cue

xuéxiào

学校

school

Gēn Bāo Jiàoshòu yuēhǎo le, zài xuéxiào jiàn.

跟鲍教授约好了在学校见。

I made arrangements with Bāo Jiàoshòu to meet him at the school.

6. Nǐ gēn Bái Kēzhǎng yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟白科长约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Chief Bái?

Cue

tāde bàngōngshì

他的办公室

his office

Gēn Bái Kēzhǎng yuēhǎo le, zài tāde bàngōngshì jiàn.

跟白科长约好了在他的办公室见。

I made arrangements with Chief Bái to meet him at his office.

7. Nǐ gēn Yáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟杨先生约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Mr. Yáng?

Cue

huikèshì

会客室

reception room

Gēn Yáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le, zài huìkèshì jiàn.

跟杨先生约好了在会客室见。

I made arrangements with Mr. **Yáng** to meet him in the reception room.

Substitution Drill

1. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒmen yǒu yàojǐnde shì, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我们有要紧的事，所以改到下午了。

Because we have some important business in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue

Lín Zhǔrèn bù néng lái

林主任不能来

Lín Zhǔrèn cannot come

Yīnwei shàngwǔ Lín Zhǔrèn bù néng lái, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午林主任不能来，所以改到下午了。

Because Director Lín cannot come in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

2. Yīnwei shàngwǔ Lín Zhǔrèn bù néng lái, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午林主任不能来，所以改到下午了。

Because Lín Zhǔrèn cannot come in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue

tā zài Wàijiāobù kāi huì

他在外交部开会

he has a meeting at the foreign ministry

Yīnwei shàngwǔ tā zài Wàijiāobù kāi huì, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午他在外交部开会，所以改到下午了。

Because he had a meeting at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

3. Yīnwei shàngwǔ tā zài Wàijiāobù kāi huì, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午他在外交部开会，所以改到下午了。

Because he had a meeting at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue

wǒ děi jiāo shū

我得教书

I have to teach

Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi jiāo shū, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得教书，所以改到下午了。

Because I have to teach in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

4. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi jiāo shū, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得教书，所以改到下午了。

Because I have to teach in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue wǒ děi dào Dàshìguān qù

我得到大使馆去

i have to go to the embassy

Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi dào Dàshìguān qù, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得到大使馆去，所以改到下午了。

Because I have to go to the embassy in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

5. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi dào Dàshìguān qù, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得到大使馆去，所以改到下午了。

Because I have to go to the embassy in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue wǒ děi gēn Wǔ Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán

我得跟伍先生当面谈谈

I need to speak to Mr. Wu face to face

Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi gēn Wǔ Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得跟伍先生当面谈谈，所以改到下午了。

Because I had to have a face-to-face meeting with Mr. Wu in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

6. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi gēn Wǔ Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得跟伍先生当面谈谈，所以改到下午了。

Because I had to have a face-to-face meeting with Mr. Wǔ in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue wǒ méi gōngfu

我没工夫

I have no time

Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ méi gōngfu, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我没工夫，所以改到下午了。

Because I have no time in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Substitution Drill

1. Xiàwǔ sān-sìdiǎn zěnmeyàng?

下午三四点怎么样？

How is [How about] three or four in the afternoon?

Cue

tā

他

he

Tā zěnmeyàng?

他怎么样？

How is he? [How about him?]

2. Tā zěnmeyàng?

他怎么样？

How is he?

Cue

Táiwān

台湾

Táiwān

Táiwān zěnmeyàng?

台湾怎么样？

How about Táiwān?

3. Táiwān zěnmeyàng?

台湾怎么样？

How about Táiwān?

Cue

Táiwānde jīngjì

台湾经济

Taiwan economy

Táiwānde jīngjì zěnmeyàng?

台湾经济怎么样？

How is Taiwan's economy?

4. Táiwānde jīngjì zěnmeyàng?

台湾经济怎么样？

How is Taiwan's economy?

Cue

nèige fàndiàn

那个饭店

that restaurant

Nèige fàndiàn zěnmeyàng?

那个饭店怎么样？

How about that restaurant?

5.

Nèige fàndiàn zěnmeyàng?

那个饭店怎么样？

How about that restaurant?

Cue

zhèige xuéxiào

这个学校

this school

Zhèige xuéxiào zěnmeyàng?

这个学校怎么样？

How is this school?

6.

Zhèige xuéxiào zěnmeyàng?

这个学校怎么样？

How is this school?

Cue

tāmen mǎide diànshì

他们卖的电视

the televisions they sell

Tāmen mǎide diànshì zěnmeyàng?

他们卖的电视怎么样？

How about the televisions they sell?

Transformation Drill

1. Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì.

他们明天开会。

They are meeting tomorrow.

Cue

shénme shíhou

什么时候

when

Tāmen míngtiān shénme shíhou kāi huì?

他们明天什么时候开会。

When are they meeting tomorrow?

2. Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì.

他们明天开会。

They are meeting tomorrow.

Cue

zài nǎr

在哪儿

where

Tāmen míngtiān zài nǎr kāi huì?

他们明天在哪儿开会？

Where are they meeting tomorrow?

3. Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì le.

他们昨天开会了。

They had meeting yesterday.

Cue

shénme shíhou

什么时候

when

Tāmen zuótiān shì shénme shíhou kāide huì?

他们昨天是什么时候开的会？

When did they have a meeting yesterday?

4. Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì le.

他们昨天开会了。

They had meeting yesterday.

Cue

zài nǎr

在哪儿

where

Tāmen zuótiān shì zài nǎr kāide huì?

他们昨天是在哪儿开的会。

where did they meet yesterday?

5.

Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì.

他们明天开会。

They are meeting tomorrow.

Cue

jǐge zhōngtóu

几个钟头

how many hours

Tāmen míntiān kāi huì kāi jǐge zhōngtóu?

他们明天开会开几个钟头？

How many hours are they meeting tomorrow?

6.

Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì le.

他们昨天开会了。

They had meeting yesterday.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì kāile duó jiǔ?

他们昨天开会开了多久？

How long did they have a meeting yesterday?

7.

Tāmen yǐjīng kāi huì le ma?

他已经开会了吗？

Did they already have meeting?

Cue

yǐjīng...le

已经了

yes

Tāmen yǐjīng kāi huì le.

他已经开会了。

He's already in a meeting.

Unit 6

References

Reference List

1. B: Jīntiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?
今天我們一起去吃中飯，號碼？
Let's go have lunch together today. Okay?
A: Hǎo a, dào Dōngmén Cāntīng qù chī ba.
好啊。到東門餐廳去吃吧。
All right. Why don't we go to the East Gate Restaurant?
2. B: Dōngmén de cài kǒngpà méiyǒu Dàhuá de cài nàme hǎo ba.
東門的菜沒有大華的菜那麼好吧。
I'm afraid that the food at the East Gate isn't as good as the food at the Great China.
A: Suǐrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen zhèli jìn.
雖然不太好，可是離我們這裏近。
Even though it [East Gate] is not too good, it is close to us.
3. B: Òu, hái yǒu yíge xīn kāide fànguǎnzi lí wǒmen zhèli gèng jìn.
哦，還有一個新開的飯館子離我們這裏更近。
Oh, there is also a newly opened restaurant that is even closer to us.
B: Tāmen nàlǐ de cài fēicháng hǎo.
他們那裏的菜非常好。
The food there is extremely good.
B: Jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ dào nàlǐ qù chī.
今天我請你到那裏去吃。
Today I am going to invite you to go there to eat.
4. A: Nà bù hǎo yìsi!
那不好意思！
I can't let you do that! (That would be too embarrassing!)
B: Bié kèqì, méi shenme. Nèige dìfāng de cài yòu hǎo yòu piányi.
別客氣，沒什麼。那個地方的菜又好又便宜。
Don't be polite. It's nothing. The food there is both good and cheap.
5. A: Nǐ shuō de dìfāng yíding hǎo.
你說的地方一定好。
Any place you suggest is sure to be good.

B: Tāmen nàlǐ yǒu hǎoxiē cài biéde dìfang chībuzháo.

他們那裏有好些菜別的地方吃不着。

They have a good many dishes there that you can't find (at) other places.

6.

bù yíding

不一定

not necessarily; it's not definite

7.

kànfa

看法

opinion, view

8.

wǎnfàn

晚飯

supper, dinner

9.

xiǎngfa

想法

idea, opinion

10.

yìxiē

一些

some, several, a few

11.

zǎofàn

早飯

breakfast

12.

zuòfa

做法

way of doing things, method, practice

Vocabulary

biéde	別的	other, different
bù hǎo yìsi	不好意思	to be embarrassing; to feel embarrassed
bù yíding	不一定	not necessarily; it's not definite
cài	菜	food, cooked dish
cāntīng	餐廳	dining room; restaurant
chībuzháo	吃不找	can't find (to eat)
Dàahuá Cāntīng	大華餐廳	Great China Restaurant
Dōngmén Cāntīng	東門餐廳	East Gate Restaurant
fēicháng	非常	very, extremely, highly
gèng	更	even more
hǎoxiē	好些	a good many, a lot
kànfa	看法	opinion, view
méiyǒu...nàme/zhème	沒有...那麼/怎麼	is not as... as...
suīrán (suīrán)...kěshì...	雖然...可是...	although, even though...(still)...
wǎnfàn	晚飯	supper, dinner
xiǎngfa	想法	idea, opinion
yíding	一定	certainly
yìxiē	一些	some, several, a few
yòu...yòu...	又...又..	both... and...
zǎofàn	早飯	breakfast
zhōngfàn	中飯	lunch
zuòfa	做法	way of doing things, method, practice
ānpaihǎo le	安排好了	successfully arranged
-bù	部	(counter for cars and buses)
chūfā	出發	to start a journey
jiāoqū	郊區	suburbs
lǎoshi	老是	always, all the time
lián...(yě)	連...也	even...(also)
Shísānlíng	十三陵	Ming Tombs (literally, "Thirteen Tombs")
yěcān	野餐	picnic
yǒu míng	又名	to be famous

Yúyuán	渝園	Szechuan Garden
zhāodài	招待	to be hospitable to

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. B: Jīntiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?
 今天我們一起去吃中飯，號碼？
 Let's go have lunch together today. Okay?
- A: Hǎo a, dào Dōngmén Cāntīng qù chī ba.
 好啊。到東門餐廳去吃吧。
 All right. Why don't we go to the East Gate Restaurant?

Zhōngfàn means, literally, “middle meal.” “Breakfast” is zǎofàn, “early meal.” “Supper” is wǎnfàn, “late meal.”

Notes on №2

2. B: Dōngmén de cài kǒngpà méiyǒu Dàhuá de cài nàme hǎo ba.
 東門的菜沒有大華的菜那麼好吧。
 I'm afraid that the food at the East Gate isn't as good as the food at the Great China.
- A: Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen zhèlǐ jìn.
 雖然不太好，可是離我們這裏近。
 Even though it [East Gate] is not too good, it is close to us.

Cài, “(non-staple) food,” “dish,” “course (of a meal)”: Literally, cài means “vegetables.” It refers to any dish that is eaten with rice. Both meat and vegetable dishes are included in the meaning.

The pattern ...(méi)you...nàme... is used to make comparisons when one thing is LESS than another.

1	+	měiyǒu	nàme/ zhème	STATE VERB OFTEN ADJECTIVAL VERB
Tā	měiyǒu	nǐ	nàme	máng.
他	沒有	你	那麼	忙。
Wǒ	měiyǒu	tā	nàme	cōngmíng.
我	沒有	他	那麼	聰明。
Tā	měiyǒu	wǒ	nàme	yǒu qián.
他	沒有	我	那麼	有錢。

Used less frequently without the negative méi-, the pattern means “to be as [quality] AS [something else].”

Nǐde shū méiyǒu wǒde shū nàme duō.
 你的書沒有我的書那麼多。

Your books are not as many as mine, (You don't have as many books as I do.)

Yǒu.

有

Yes, they are. (Yes, I do have as many books as you do.)

Nèige xuéxiào de túshūguǎn yǒu zhèige xuéxiào de zhème hǎo ma?

那個學校的圖書館有這個學校的怎麼好嗎？

Is that school's library as good as this one's?

Suǐrán... kěshì... : Suǐrán (or suǐrán), “although,” must always be followed by kěshì or dànsì, meaning “but,” in the second part of a sentence.

Kěshì/dànsì would not usually be translated into English, but sometimes the word “still” is included in the translation: “Although it's not too good, still it's close to us.” Suǐrán may either precede the subject or be placed between the subject and the verb of a sentence.

Suǐrán tā xǐhuan lǚxíng, kěshì tā méi qùguo Zhōngguó.

雖然她喜歡旅行，可是她沒去過中國。

Although she likes to travel, she has never been to China.

Tā suǐrán jiǎng le hǎojǐcì, kěshì wǒ hái shì bù dǒng.

他雖然講了好幾次，可是我還是不懂，

Although he explained it many times I still didn't understand.

Wǒ suǐrán méi kànjianguo, kěshì tīng rén shuōguo.

我雖然沒看見過，可是聽人說過。

Although I have never seen it, I have heard of it.

Notes on №3

3. B: Òu, hái yǒu yíge xīn kāide fànguǎnzi lí wǒmen zhèli gèng jìn.
哦，還有一個新開的飯館子離我們這裏更近。
Oh, there is also a newly opened restaurant that is even closer to us.
- B: Tāmen nàlǐ de cài fēicháng hǎo.
他們那裏的菜非常好。
The food there is extremely good.
- B: Jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ dào nàlǐ qù chī.
今天我請你到那裏去吃。
Today I am going to invite you to go there to eat.

Xīn kāide: The adjectival verb xīn, “new,” means “newly,” “recently” when used as an adverb.

Gèng, “more,” “even more,” “still more”

Zài lǐngshìguǎn gōngzuòde rén bǐ dàshìguǎn gèng duō.

在領事館工作的人比大使館更多。

More people work at the consulates than at the embassy.

Lǜ píngguǒ hěn guì, hóng píngguǒ gèng guì.

綠蘋果很貴，紅蘋果更貴。

Green apples are expensive; red apples are even more expensive.

Zhāng Tíngfēng shuōde Zhōngguó huà, Zhōngguó rén hěn nán tīngdedǒng, wàiguó rén yíding gèng nán.

張霆鋒說的中國話，中國人很難聽得懂，外國人一定更難。

Zhāng Tíng Fēng's Chinese is hard for Chinese people to understand; for a foreigner, it would certainly be even harder.

An overview of comparison: you have now learned several ways to compare things. The patterns presented here are the most common ones. Each pattern has a standard purpose:

MORE	...bǐ... (STATE VERB)	比
LESS	...méiyǒu...nàme (STATE VERB)	沒有那麼
EQUAL	...gēn...yíyang (STATE VERB)	跟一樣

A simple adjectival verb may also be used to make a comparison:

Zhèi liǎngběn, nǎběn guì?

這兩本，哪本貴？

Which of these two books is more expensive?

For each of the three patterns above (MORE—LESS—EQUAL), the comparison is made with a STATE verb. State verbs include adjectival verbs (*hǎo*, “to be good”), auxiliary verbs (*huì*, “to know how to,” “can”), and verbs describing mental attitudes or situations (*zhīdao*, “to know”; *xǐhuan*, “to like”; *ài*, “to love”).

Tā bǐ wǒ ài chī Zhōngguó fàn.

他比我愛中國飯。

He loves to eat Chinese food more than I.

Zhèjiàn shìqing, nǐ bǐ tā zhīdao.

這件事情，你比他知道。

You know more about this than he does.

Tā méiyǒu wǒ zhème xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng.

他沒有我怎麼喜歡看電影。

He doesn't like to see movies as much as I do.

Although the verb phrase begins with a state verb, that may not be the only word in the comparison. It may be expanded to include other verbs (any type) and objects.

The things being compared may also be expanded. Whole sentences may be placed in the slots for things compared:

Zuò huǒchē méiyǒu zuò fēijī nàme kuài.

坐火車沒有坐飛機那麼快。

Going by train is not as fast as going by plane.

Wǒ xué Zhōngwén bǐ tā xué lìshǐ róngyi.

我學中文比他學歷史容易。

It's easier for him, studying history, than it is for me, studying Chinese.

Although the prepositional verb *bǐ* is used to say that one thing is “more” than another, do not use the negative of this pattern to say that something is “less.”

Tā bǐ tā gēge néng shuō huà.

他比他哥哥能說話。

He is a better talker (smoother talker) than his older brother.

This pattern may also be expanded to indicate just HOW MUCH more one thing is than another. (Place the amount after the verb in a sentence.)

Zhèběn bǐ nàběn guì sānkuài qián.

這本比那本貴三塊錢。

This book is three dollars more expensive than that one.

Wǒ bǐ tā dà liǎngsuì.

我比他大兩歲。

I am two years older than she is.

Another way to indicate how much more is to add *-de duō*, “a lot,” to an adjectival verb.

Zhèige bǐ nèige hǎokànde duō!

這個比那個好看得多。

This is much better looking than that!

Use the pattern *...méiyou...nàme* + state verb to say that one thing is less than another.

Wǒde zì méiyou tāde nàme hǎokàn.

我的字沒有他的那麼好看。

My characters don't look as good as his.

Tā xiǎng mǎide fángzi méiyou zhèige fángzi jìn.

她想買的房子沒有這個房子近。

The house she wants to buy isn't as close as this one.

The affirmative pattern *...yǒu...nàme* + state verb is ambiguous: it says that one item is AT LEAST AS expensive as another item which is either equally expensive or less expensive. This pattern is not as common as *...méiyou...name* + state verb.

The adverbs *gèng*, “even more,” and *zuì*, “most,” are easily used to compare more than two things. (Place these adverbs before the verb in a sentence.)

Zhèi liǎngběn hěn guì, kěshi nàběn gèng guì.

這兩本很貴，可是那本更貴。

These two books are very expensive, but that one is even more expensive.

Dìyīběn bǐ dìèrběn guì, kěshi dìsānběn zuì guì.

第一本比第二本貴，可是第三本最貴。

The first book is more expensive than that one, but the third one is the most expensive.

If the entire sentence involves a comparison of the three books, the speaker may single out the most expensive book with **zui**, or sometimes without it.

Zhèi sānběn shū, nǎběn guì?

這三本書，哪本貴？

Of these three books, which is the (most) expensive one?

Zhèiběn zuì guì.

這本最貴。

This one is the most expensive.

Notes on №4

4. A: Nà bù hǎo yìsi!

那不好意思！

I can't let you do that! (That would be too embarrassing!)

B: Bié kèqi, méi shenme. Nèige dìfangde cài yòu hǎo yòu piányi.

別客氣，沒什麼。那個地方的菜又好又便宜。

Don't be polite. It's nothing. The food there is both good and cheap.

Bù hǎo yìsi is an idiomatic phrase meaning “to be embarrassing.” In Chinese culture, treating someone to a meal both shows your respect for him and maintains your status as a generous host. In exchange 4, **Nà bù hǎo yìsi** means “I’m embarrassed to have you show me so much respect,” or “I’m embarrassed to appear to be too cheap to treat you.” **Bù hǎo yìsi** also means “to feel embarrassed.”

Yòu...yòu..., “both...and.. The element following each you may be as simple as an adjectival verb or as complex as a full verb phrase.

Tā háizi yòu huì shuō Yīngwén, yòu huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.

他孩子又會說英文，又會說中國話。

His child can speak both English and Chinese.

Notes on №5

5. A: Nǐ shuōde dìfang yíding hǎo.

你說的地方一定好。

Any place you suggest is sure to be good.

B: Tāmen nàli yǒu hǎoxiē cài biéde dìfang chībuzháo.

他們那裏有好些菜別的地方吃不着。

They have a good many dishes there that you can't find (at) other places.

Yíding, “certainly,” can act as either an adverb or an adjectival verb.

ADVERB

Tā yíding lái.

ADVERB

他一定來。

He will definitely come.

Wǒ bù yíding qù.

我不一定去。

It's not certain that I will go.

Wǒ hái bù yíding qù.

我還不一定去。

It's not yet certain that I will go.

ADJECTIVAL VERB

Nǐ nǐtiān qù? Hái bù yíding.

你那天去？還不一定。

On what day are you going there? It's not certain yet.

Na shì yídingde.

那是一定的。

That's for sure.

Hǎoxiē means “a good many” or “a lot.” You have seen *-xiē*, “several,” “some,” in *zhèxiē*, “these,” and *nèixiē*, “those.” The element *-xiē* also occurs in *yìxiē*, “some,” “a few”: *Shūjiàzishang hái yǒu yìxiē shū*, (書架子還有一些書) “There are still a few books on the bookcase.”

Biéde is the word for “other” in the sense of “a different one.”

Lǐngwài is the word for “other” when you mean “an additional one.”

Chībuzháo: In this compound verb of result, the ending *-zháo* indicates

success in obtaining something. Here are some examples of compounds ending in *-zháo*:

Wǒ zhǎobuzháo tāde diànhuà hàomǎr.

我找不着他的電話號碼兒。

I cannot find his phone number.

Jīntiān méi mǎizháo píngguǒ.

今天沒買着蘋果。

I did not succeed in buying apples today.

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

6. *bù yíding*
不一定
not necessarily; it's not definite
7. *kànfa*
看法
opinion, view

8.	wǎnfàn 晚飯 supper, dinner
9.	xiǎngfa 想法 idea, opinion
10.	yìxiē 一些 some, several, a few
11.	zǎofàn 早飯 breakfast
12.	zuòfa 做法 way of doing things, method, practice

Kànfa, “opinion,” “view,” may be loosely translated as “way of looking at things.” The word is made up of **kàn**, “to look,” and **fǎ**, “method,” “way.”

Wǒmen duì zhèjiàn shìde kànfa bù yíyàng.

我們對這件事的看法不一樣。

Our opinions on this matter are not the same.

Xiǎngfa, “idea,” “opinion,” is made up of **xiǎng**, “to think,” and **fǎ**, “method,” “way.” **Xiǎngfa** is a “way of thinking.” The word is actually pronounced **xiǎngfa**.

Tāde xiǎngfa gēn wǒde yíyàng.

他的想法跟我的一樣。

His way of thinking is the same as mine.

Zuòfa, “way of doing things,” “method,” “practice,” is made up of the verb **zuò**, “to do,” and **fǎ**, “method,” “way.”

Nǐde mùdì hěn hǎo, kěshì wǒ bù xǐhuan nǐde zuòfa.

你的目的很好，可是我不喜歡你的做法。

Your goal is good, but I don't like your methods.

Drills

Response Drill

- Jīntiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?
今天我们一起去吃中饭，好吗？
Let's go have lunch together today. Okay?

Hǎo, jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ.
好，今天我请你。
All right. Today I'm inviting you.
- Jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.
今天我请你去吃中饭。
Today I am inviting you to go to eat lunch.

Bié kèqi, wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.
别客气，我们一起去吃中饭。
Don't be so polite. Let's Just go together and split the bill.
- Míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?
明天中午我们一起去吃中饭，好吗？
Let's have lunch together at noon tomorrow, shall we?

Hǎo, míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒ qǐng nǐ.
好，明天中午我请你。
All right. Tomorrow at noon, I'm inviting you.
- Míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒ qǐng nǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.
明天中午我请你去吃中饭。
I'll invite you to lunch tomorrow at noon.

Bié kèqi, wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.
别客气，我们一起去吃中饭。
Don't be so polite. Let's Just go together and split the bill.
- Xīngqīwǔ wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?
星期五我们一起去吃中饭，好吗？

Let's have lunch together on Friday, shall we?

Hǎo, Xīngqīwǔ wǒ qǐng nǐ.

好，星期五我请你。

All right, I am inviting you on Friday.

6. Xīngqīliù wǒ qǐng nǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.

星期六我请你去吃中饭。

I am inviting you to lunch on Saturday.

Bié kèqì, wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.

别客气，我们一起去吃中饭。

Don't be so polite. Let's Just go together and split the bill.

7. Míngtiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?

明天中午我们一起去吃中饭，好吗？

Let's have lunch together at noon tomorrow, shall we?

Hǎo, míngtiān wǒ qǐng nǐ.

好，明天我请你。

OK, I'm inviting you tomorrow.

Transformation Drill

1. Nèige ròu bǐ zhèige ròu hǎo.

那个肉比这个肉好。

This meat is better than that meat.

Zhèige ròu méiyǒu nèige ròu nàme hǎo.

这个肉没有那个肉那么好。

This meat is not as good as that meat.

2. Xīnde bǐ jiùde hǎo.

新的比旧的好。

New is better than old.

Jiùde méiyǒu xīnde nàme hǎo.

旧的没有新的那么好。

The old ones are not as good as the new ones.

3. Dàhuáde cài bǐ Dōngménde cài hǎo.

大话的菜比东门的菜好。

The dishes in Dàhuá are better than those in Dōngmén.

Dōngménde cài méiyǒu Dàhuáde cài nàme hǎo.

东门的菜没有大话的菜那么好。

Dōngmén's dishes are not as good as those in Dàhuá.

4. Tāde qián bǐ wǒde qián duō.

他/她的钱比我的钱多。

He/she has more money than me.

Wǒde qián méiyǒu tāde qián nàme duō.

我的钱没有他的钱那么多。

I don't have as much money as he does.

5. Nèige ròu bǐ zhèige ròu guì.

那个肉比这个肉贵。

That meat is more expensive than this one.

Zhèige ròu měiyǒu nèige ròu nàme guì.

这个肉没有那个肉那么贵。

This meat is not as expensive as that meat.

6. Jiù shū bǐ xīn shū piányi.

旧书比新书便宜。

Used books are cheaper than new ones.

Xīn shū měiyǒu jiù shū nàme piányi.

新书没有旧书那么便宜。

New books are not as cheap as old ones.

7. Tā kāi chē bǐ wǒ kāide kuài.

他开车比我开得快。

He drives faster than me.

Wǒ kāi chē měiyǒu tā kāide nàme kuài.

我开车没有他开de车那么快。

I don't drive as fast as he does.

Combination Drill

1. **Bú tài hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā jìn.**

不太好。离我们家近。

It is not too good. It is close to us.

Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā jìn.

虽然不太好，可是离我们家近。

Even though it is not too good it is close to us.

2. **Hěn hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.**

很好。离我们家太远。

It is very good. It is too far from us.

Suīrán hěn hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.

虽然很好，可是离我们家太远。

Even though it is very good, it is too far from us.

3. **Bú tài fāngbian. Lí wǒmen jiā jìn.**

不太方便。离我们家近。

It is not very convenient. It's close to us.

Suīrán bú tài fāngbian, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā jìn.

虽然不太方便，可是离我们家近。

Even though it is not very convenient, but it's close to us.

4. **Bú tài piányi. Lí wǒmen jiā jìn.**

不太便宜。离我们家近。

It is not so cheap. It's close to us.

Suīrán bú tài piányi, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā jìn.

虽然不太便宜，可是离我们家近。

Even though it is not cheap, but it's close to us.

5. **Hěn piányi. Lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.**

很便宜。离我们家远。

It is very cheap. It's far away from us.

Suīrán hěn piányi, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.

虽然很便宜，可是离我们家远。

Even though it is cheap, it is far from us.

6. Hěn hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.

很好。离我们家远。

It is very good. It's far away from us.

Suīrán hěn hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.

虽然很好，可是离我们家远。

Even though it is nice, but far from us.

7. Bú tài hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā hěn jìn.

不太好。离我们家近。

It is not too good. It is close to us.

Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā hěn jìn.

虽然不太好，可是离我们家近。

Even though it is not great, but it's close to us.

Transformation Drill

1. Nèige fànguǎnzi lí zhèr hěn jìn.
那个饭馆子离这儿很近。
That restaurant is very close to here.

Cue zhèige
这个
this

Zhèige fànguǎnzi bǐ nèige fànguǎnzi lí zhèr gèng jìn.
这个饭馆子比那个饭馆子离这儿很近。
This restaurant is even closer to here than that restaurant.

2. Tā jiā lí zhèr hěn jìn.
他家离这儿很近。
His home is very close to here.

Cue wǒ jiā
我家
my home

Wǒ jiā bǐ tā jiā lí zhèr gèng jìn.
我家比他家离这儿更近。
My home is closer to here than his.

3. Nèige yínháng lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.
那个银行离这儿很远。
That bank is far from here.

Cue Zhōngguó Yínháng
这个银行
Bank of China

Zhōngguó Yínháng bǐ nèige yínháng lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.
中国银行比那个银行离这儿很远。
Bank of China is much farther away than that bank.

4. Wǔlù Qìchēzhàn lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.

五路汽车站离这儿很远。

The No. 5 bus station is far from here.

Cue **nèige Qìchēzhàn**
 那个汽车站
 that bus station

Nèige Qìchēzhàn bǐ Wūlù Qìchēzhàn lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.

那个汽车站比五路汽车站离这儿很远。

That bus station is farther away than the **Wūlù** bus station.

5. **Wǔguānchù lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.**

武官处离这儿很远。

The military attaché is far away.

Cue **Dàshìguǎn**
 大使馆
 embassy

Dàshìguǎn bǐ Wǔguānchù lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.

大使馆比武官处离这儿很远。

The embassy is farther away than the military attaché.

6. **Huǒchēzhàn lí zhèr hěn jìn.**

火车站离这儿很近。

The train station is very close from here.

Cue **Gōnglùjú chēzhàn**
 公路局车站
 Gōnglùjú bus station

Gōnglùjú chēzhàn bǐ huǒchēzhàn lí zhèr gèng jìn.

公路局车站比火车站离这儿很近。

The **Gōnglùjú** bus station is much closer than the railway station.

7. **Wú Kēzhǎng jiā lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.**

吾科长家离这儿很远。

The head of our department is far away from here.

Cue **Lǐ Jiāoshòu jiā**

李教授家

Lǐ Jiàoshòu' s home

Lǐ Jiàoshòu jiā bǐ Wú Kēzhǎng jiā lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.

李教授家比吾科长家离这儿很远。

Professor Lǐ's home is much farther away than the head of Wú's department.

Transformation Drill

1. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián.
张小姐，王先生都有钱。
Both Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue the same

Zhāng Xiǎojiě gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yíyàng yǒu qián.
张小姐跟王先生一样有钱。
Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng are equally rich.

2. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián.
张小姐，王先生都有钱。
Both Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue more

Zhāng Xiǎojiě bǐ Wáng Xiānsheng yǒu qián.
张小姐比王先生有钱。
Miss Zhāng is richer than Mr. Wáng.

3. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián.
张小姐，王先生都有钱。
Both Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue less

Zhāng Xiǎojiě méiyǒu Wáng Xiānsheng nàme yǒu qián.
张小姐没有王先生那么有钱。
Miss Zhāng is not as rich as Mr. Wáng.

4. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián.
张小姐，王先生都有钱。
Both Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue even more

Zhāng Xiǎojiě bǐ Wáng Xiānsheng gèng yǒu qián.

张小姐比王先生更有钱。

Miss Zhāng is richer than Mr. Wáng.

5. Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián, Wáng Xiānshengde qián dōu hěn duō.

张小姐的钱，王先生的钱都很多。

Both Ms. Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue the same

Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián gēn Wáng Xiānshengde qián yíyàng duō.

张小姐的钱跟王先生的钱一样多。

Miss Zhāng is as rich as Mr. Wáng.

6. Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián, Wáng Xiānshengde qián dōu hěn duō.

张小姐的钱，王先生的钱都很多。

Both Ms. Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue less

Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián méiyǒu Wáng Xiānshengde qián nàme duō.

张小姐的钱没有王先生的钱那么多。

Miss Zhāng has not as much money as Mr. Wáng.

7. Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián, Wáng Xiānshengde qián dōu hěn duō.

张小姐的钱，王先生的钱都很多。

Both Ms. Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue even more

Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián bǐ Wáng Xiānshengde qián gèng duō.

张小姐的钱比王先生的钱更多。

Miss Zhāng has more money than Mr. Wáng.

Substitution Drill

1. Nǐmen zhèrde cài hěn hǎo.
你们这儿的菜很好。
Your food here is very good.

Cue fēicháng
非常
exceptionally

Nǐmen zhèrde cài fēicháng hǎo.
你们这儿的菜非常好。
Your food here is exceptionally good.

2. Nǐmen zhèrde cài fēicháng hǎo.
你们这儿的菜非常好。
Your food here is exceptionally good.

Cue hǎojíle
好极了
extremely

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.
你们这儿的菜好极了。
Your food here is extremely good.

3. Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.
你们这儿的菜好极了。
Your food here is extremely good.

Cue hǎo yidiǎn
好极了
a little (more); better

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎo yidiǎn.
你们这儿的菜好极了。
Your food here is a little better.

4. Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎo yidiǎn.

你们这儿的菜好一点。

Your food here is a little (more) good (better).

Cue

gèng

更

even more

Nǐmen zhèrde cài gèng hǎo.

你们这儿的菜更好。

Your food here is even more good.

5.

Nǐmen zhèrde cài gèng hǎo.

你们这儿的菜更好。

Your food here is even more good.

Cue

hǎojile

好极了

extremely

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojile.

你们这儿的菜好极了。

Your food here is extremely good.

6.

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojile.

你们这儿的菜好极了。

Your food here is extremely good.

Cue

tèbié

特别

especially

Nǐmen zhèrde cài tèbié hǎo.

你们这儿的菜特别好。

Your food here is especially good.

Cobination Drill

1. Zhèiběn shū hěn hǎo. Zhèiběn shū hěn piányi.

这本书很好。这本书很便宜。

This book is good. This book is inexpensive.

Zhèiběn shū yòu hǎo yòu piányi

这本书又好又便宜。

This book is both good and inexpensive.

2. Nǐ mǎide dìtú hěn hǎo. Nǐ mǎide dìtú hěn piányi.

你买的地图很好。你买的地图很便宜。

The maps you bought are good. The maps you buy are cheap.

Ni mǎide dìtú yòu hǎo yòu piányi.

你买的地图又好又便宜。

The maps he bought are both good and cheap.

3. Tā zhùde fàndiàn hěn hǎo. Tā zhùde fàndiàn hěn dà.

他住的饭店很好。他住的饭店很大。

The hotel where he lives is good. The hotel where he lives is big.

Tā zhùde fàndiàn yòu hǎo yòu dà.

他住的饭店又好又大。

The hotel where he lives is both good and big.

4. Nèibān fēijī hěn kuài. Nèibān fēijī hěn piányi.

那般飞机很快。那般飞机很便宜。

That plane is fast. That plane is cheap.

Nèibān fēijī yòu kuài yòu piányi.

那般飞机又快又便宜。

That plane is both fast and cheap.

5. Zuò huǒchē qù hěn hǎo. Zuò huǒchē qù hěn fāngbian.

坐火车去很好。坐火车去很方便。

To go by train is fine. To go by train is very convenient.

Zuò huǒchē qù yòu hǎo yòu fāngbian.

坐火车去又好又方便。

To go by train is both fine and convenient.

6. Zhège fànguǎnzi hěn jìn. Zhège fànguǎnzi hěn piányi.

这个饭馆子很近。这个饭馆子很便宜。

This restaurant is very close. This restaurant is very cheap.

Zhège fànguǎnzi yòu jìn yòu piányi.

这个饭馆子又近又便宜。

This restaurant is both close and cheap.

7. Tā mǎide dìtǎn hěn piányi. Tā mǎide dìtǎn hěn hǎo.

他买的地毯很便宜。他买的地毯很很好。

The rugs he bought were cheap. The rugs he bought are very nice.

Tā mǎide dìtǎn yòu piányi yòu hǎo.

他买的地毯又便宜又好。

The maps he bought are both good and cheap.

Expansion Drill

1. Zhèrde ròu fēicháng hǎo.

这儿的肉非常好。

The meat here is exceptionally good.

Cue

chī

吃

eat

Zhèrde ròu fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang chībuzháo.

这儿的肉非常好，别的地方吃不着。

The meat here is exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

2. Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo.

那儿的菜非常好。

The food there is exceptionally good.

Cue

mǎi

买

buy

Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang mǎibuzháo.

那儿的菜非常好，别的地方买不着。

The food there is exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

3. Nàrde táng fēicháng hǎo.

那儿的糖非常好。

The soup there is exceptionally good.

Cue

mǎi

买

buy

Nàrde táng fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang mǎibuzháo.

那儿的糖非常好，别的地方买不着。

The soup there is exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

4. Zhèrde diànyíng fēicháng hǎo.

这儿的电影非常好。

The movies there are exceptionally good.

Cue

kàn

看

read

Zhèrde diànyǐng fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfāng kànbuzháo.

这儿的电影非常好，别的地方看着不着。

The movies there are exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

5. Zhèrde shū fēicháng duō.

这儿的书非常好。

The books there are exceptionally good.

Cue

kàn

看

read

Zhèrde shū fēicháng duō, biéde dìfāng kànbuzháo.

这儿的书非常好，别的地方看着不着。

The books there are exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

6. Nàrde diànshì fēicháng hǎo.

那儿的电视非常好。

The TVs there are exceptionally good.

Cue

mǎi

买

buy

Nàrde diànshì fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfāng mǎibuzháo.

那儿的电视非常好，别的地方买不着。

The TVs there are exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

7. Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo.

那儿的菜非常好。

The food there is exceptionally good.

Cue

chī

吃

eat

Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang chībuzháo.

那儿的菜非常好，别的地方吃不着。

The food there is exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

Unit 7

References

Reference List

1. B: Wèi.
喂
Hello.
A: Zhāng Xiānsheng ma?
張先生嗎？
Is this Mr. Zhāng?
2. B: Shìde. Nín shì bu shì Bái Nǚshì?
是的。您是不是白女士？
Yes. Is this Miss White?
A: Shì. Zhāng Xiānsheng, wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.
是。張先生，我有一件事想跟你打聽打聽。
Yes. Mr. Zhāng, I have something I would like to ask you about.
3. B: Shénme shì?
什麼事？
What is it?
A: Tīngshuō nín nàbian xīn lái le fāng xiānsheng, shì gāng pàilaide; tāde míngzi wǒ wàngjì le.
聽說您那邊新來了方先生，是剛派來的；他的名字我忘記了。
I have heard that you recently had a Mr. Fāng join you, who has just been assigned to your office. I have forgotten his given name.
4. B: Bú cuò, Fāng Dé míng shì shàngge lǐbài pài dào wǒmen zhèlǐ lái de.
不錯，方德銘是上個禮拜派到我們這裏來的。
That's right. Fāng Dé míng was sent over here last week.
B: Zěnmé? Nǐ rènshi ta ma?
怎麼？你認識他嗎。
Why? Do you know him?
5. A: Bú rènshi.
不認識。
I don't know him.
A: Búguò tīngshuō tā yě shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède, suǒyǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ jièshào jièshào.

- 不過聽說他也是加州大學畢業的，所以想請你給我介紹介紹。
- However, I have heard that he also graduated from the University of California, so I wanted to ask you to introduce me to him.
6. B: Méi wèntí. Wǒ kànkàn...hǎo, wǒmen xiànzài dōu yǒu gōngfu.
沒問題。我看看...好，我們現在都有功夫。
No problem. I'll take a look.... Okay, we are both free now.
- B: Nǐ xiànzài néng lái ma?
你現在能來嗎？
Can you come now?
7. A: Xíng.
行。
That will be fine.
- A: Wǒ mǎshàng dào nín bànɡōnɡshì lái.
我馬上到您辦公室來。
I'll come to your office right away.
- A: Chàbùduō bànɡe zhōnɡtóu jiù dào.
差不多半個鐘頭就到。
I'll be there in about half an hour.
8. jìde
記得
to remember
9. rènde
認得
to recognize, to know (alternate word for rènshi)
10. rènshi zì
認識字
to know how to read (literally, "to recognize characters")
11. wàng
忘
to forget (alternate word for wàngji, especially in the sense of forgetting to DO something)
12. wánquán
完全
completely
13. xiǎnɡqilai
想起來
to think of, to remember
14. zuǒyòu
左右

approximately

Vocabulary

bìyè	畢業	to graduate
bú cuò	不錯	not bad, pretty good; that's right
chàbùduō	差不多	almost, about, approximately
dǎtíng	大廳	to inquire about, to ask about
jìde	記得	to remember
mǎshàng	馬上	immediately
méi wèntí	沒問題	(there's) no problem
pài dào	派到	to send to
pàilái	派來	to send here
rènde	認得	to recognize, to know
rènshi	認識	to recognize, to know
rènshi zì	認識字	to know how to read (literally, "to recognize characters")
tīngshuō	聽說	to hear that
wàng	忘	to forget
wàngjì	忘記	to forget
wánquán	完全	completely
wèntí	問題	problem, question
xiǎngqǐlái	想起來	to think of, to remember
zuǒyòu	左右	approximately
cōngmíng	聰明	to be intelligent
duōde duō	多得多	much more
kěnéng	可能	maybe
Shìjiè Yínháng	世界銀行	World Bank
xiū jià	休假	to take a vacation
yánjiuyuàn	研究院	graduate school
yàobushi...jiù shì...	要不是..就是..	if it's not... then it will be...
yònggōng	用工 to be hard-working	undefined
yuèchū	月初	the beginning of the month
yuèdǐ	月底	the end of the month

Reference Notes

Notes on №1-2

1. B: Wèi.
喂
Hello.
- A: Zhāng Xiānsheng ma?
張先生嗎？
Is this Mr. Zhāng?
2. B: Shìde. Nín shì bu shì Bái Nǚshì?
是的。您是不是白女士？
Yes. Is this Miss White?
- A: Shì. Zhāng Xiānsheng, wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.
是。張先生，我有一件事想跟你打聽打聽。
Yes. Mr. Zhāng, I have something I would like to ask you about.

Gēn nín dǎtīng, “ask information from you”: Note that the prepositional verb **gēn** is translated as “from.” **Dǎtīng**, “to inquire,” is less formal than **qǐngjiào** and requests information rather than advice.

Objects of reduplicated verbs: Reduplicated verbs may be followed only by DEFINITE objects. Indefinite objects of reduplicated verbs precede those verbs. In the last sentence of exchange 2, the object of the reduplicated verb **dǎtīng dǎtīng** is indefinite: **yíjiàn shì**, “a matter” Thus the object is introduced in the clause **wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì** which precedes the entire verb phrase **xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng**.

Reduplicating a verb makes it indefinite; adding an indefinite object might cause confusion. The reduplicated verbs in the sentences below have definite objects:

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng nèijiàn shì.

我想跟您打聽打聽那件事。

I would like to ask you about that.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng zhèijiàn shì.

我想跟您打聽打聽這件事。

I would like to ask you about this.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng tāde shì.

我想跟您打聽打聽他的事。

I would like to ask you about his matter (about ask him)

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng nǐde nèijiàn shì.

我想跟您打聽打聽你的那件事。

I would like to ask you about that matter of yours.

Simple verbs are used in the following sentences, which have indefinite objects:

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng yídiǎn shì.

我想跟您打聽一點事。

I would like to ask you about something.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng hěn duō shì.

我想跟您打聽很多事。

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng jǐjiàn shì.

我想跟您打聽幾件事。

I would like to ask you about a few things.

Notes on №3

3. B: Shénme shì?

什麼事？

What is it?

A: Tīngshuō nín nàbian xīn lái le fāng xiānsheng, shì gāng pàilade; tāde míngzi wǒ wàngji le.

聽說您那邊新來了方先生，是剛派來的；他的名字我忘記了。

I have heard that you recently had a Mr. Fāng join you, who has just been assigned to your office. I have forgotten his given name.

Tīngshuō corresponds to the English “I hear that...”

... lái le yíwèi fāng xiānsheng, “there came a Mr. Fāng”: While “a” and “the” are used in English to distinguish between indefinite and definite, word order accomplishes the same distinction in Chinese. The subject “A Mr. Fāng” is placed AFTER the verb because the subject is indefinite. With an indefinite subject following the verb, information preceding the verb may give location, time, or other scene-setting details.

Zhèr xīn kāile yige hěn hǎode fànguǎnzi.

這兒新開了一個很好的飯館子。

A very good restaurant opened here recently.

Zuótiān lái le yìxiē Riběn rén.

昨天來了一些日本人。

Some Japanese came yesterday.

Yǐjīng qù le wǔbǎige rén.

已經去了五百個人。

Five hundred people have already gone there.

Verbs of appearing and verbs of disappearing (“to come,” “to discover,” “to happen/occur”) introduce indefinite subjects, as do the words you and yǒude.

Wàibian yǒu jǐge rén zhǎo nǐ.

外邊有幾個人找你。

There are some people outside who want to see you.

Yǒude rén bù xǐhuan hē chá.

有的人不喜歡喝茶。

Some people don't like to drink tea.

Some situations may be described with either you or another verb.

Zuótiān yǒu yige rén lái zhǎo nǐ.

昨天有一個人來找你。

Yesterday there was someone here looking for you.

Zuótiān lái le yige rén yào zhǎo nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

昨天來了一個人要找你當面談談。

Yesterday someone was here who was looking for you to talk with you in person.

Subjects occurring at the end of a sentence are indefinite, whether or not they are accompanied by *yige*. Subjects preceding the verb in a sentence are definite, whether or not they are accompanied by *zhèige*, *nèige*, *zhèixiē*, *nèixiē*, or other specifying words.

來人了。

Lái rén le.

Some people have come.

Rén lái le.

人來了。

The people have come, (i.e., those whom we were expecting)

Míngzi means “name”—of an object, a place, or a person (GIVEN NAME). Occasionally, *míngzi* is used for a person's full name (surname and given name). This usage is more common in the PRC.

Wàngji is a verb meaning “to forget”—used especially in reference to forgetting facts. *Wàng*, “to forget,” is more commonly used for forgetting to do something. The verb *jìde* means “to remember.”

Notes on №4

4. B: *Bú cuò, Fāng Dé míng shì shàngge lǐbài pài dào wǒmen zhèlǐ lái de.*

不錯，方德銘是上個禮拜派到我們這裏來的。

That's right. *Fāng Dé míng* was sent over here last week.

B: *Zěnmē? Nǐ rènshi ta ma?*

怎麼？你認識他嗎。

Why? Do you know him?

Bú cuò means “not bad” in the sense of pretty good,” “pretty well,” “all right.”

Nǐ zěnmeyàng?

你怎麼樣？

How are things going?

Bú cuò.

不錯。

Not bad.

In the first sentence of No. 4, **bú cuò** means “that’s right, your information is not wrong.”

Lǐ Xiānsheng, nǐ gāng cóng Xiānggǎng huílai, shì ma?
 李先生，你剛從香港回來，是嗎？
 Mr. Li, you just got back from Hong Kong, didn't you?
Bú cuò, wǒ shì zuótiān huilaide.
 不錯，我是昨天回來的。
 That's right. I got back yesterday.

Here are more examples of **bú cuò**:

Nèige fànguǎnzide cài zhēn bú cuò.
 那個飯館子菜真不錯。
 That restaurant really has pretty good food.
Tā shuō Zhōngguó huà, shuōde bú cuò.
 他說中國話，說得不錯。
 He speaks Chinese pretty well.

In the first example, notice that an adverb precedes **bú cuò**: **zhēn bú cuò Pài dào...lái** is a three-part verb: action verb (also expressing MOTION), prepositional verb (must take an object), and directional verb (**lái, qù**)

ACTION VERB	PREPOSITION- AL VERB	OBJECT	DIRECTION- AL VERB
pǎo 跑	dào 到	shānshàng 山上	qù #
		“to run up on the hill”	
bān 搬	dào 到	zhèr 這兒	lái 來
		“to move it into here”	
ná 拿	dào 到	xuéxiào 學校	qù 去
		“to take it to school”	
zǒu 走	dào 到	hòubiān 後邊兒	lái 來
		“to walk to the back”	

Zěnmé, “why,” “how come,” “how is it that...,”*

Note

You have already learned that **zěnmé** can mean “how.”

is a more colloquial and challenging word for “why” than **wèishénme**. Only a reason or an explanation is requested by **wèishénme**. **Zěnmé** expresses more, emphasizing the speaker’s surprise or lack of understanding.

Níménde bàngōngshì zěnmé zhème xiǎo?

你們的辦公室怎麼這麼小？

How is it that your office is so small?

Tā fùmǔ dōu shuō Zhōngguó huà, tā zěnmé bú huì shuō?

他父母都說中國話，他怎麼不會說。

Both his parents speak Chinese. How is it that he can't?

Zhème yàojǐnde shì, wǒ zěnmé wàngle zuò le?

這麼要緊的事，我怎麼忘了做了？

How could I have forgotten to do such an important thing?

Nǐ zěnmé bú niàn shū ne?

你怎麼不念書呢？

How come you're not studying?

Nǐ zěnmé bù shuō huà? Yǒu shénme bù gāoxingde shì ma?

你怎麼不說話？有什麼不高興的事嗎？

How come you're not saying anything? Is there something you are unhappy about?

The meaning of *zěnmé* is sometimes affected by the aspect marker used:

Nǐ zěnmé lái le?

你怎麼來了？

How come you are here? (i.e., "What are you doing here?")

Nǐ (shì) zěnmé lái de?

你(是)怎麼來的？

How did you get here? (i.e., by what means of transportation)

Rènshi the state verb means "to know" in the sense of "to be acquainted with," "to be familiar with," "to recognize." As an action verb, *rènshi* means "to meet," "to get acquainted with."

STATE VERB

Nǐ rènshi Zhāng Guóquán ma?

你認識張國權嗎？

Do you know Zhāng Guóquán?

Nǐ rènshi ta ma?

你認識他嗎？

Do you know him?

Wǒmen bú tài rènshi.

我們不太認識。

We are not too well acquainted.

Wǒmen qùnián hái bú rènshi.

我們去年還不認識。

We did not know each other yet last year.

ACTION VERB

Wǒ zài Měiguode shíhou, rènshile hěn duō Měiguó niánqīng rén.

ACTION VERB

Note

niánqīng, “to be young”

我在美國的時候，認識了很多美國年輕人。

When I was in America, I met a lot of young Americans.

Wǒ shì qiánnián rènshi tāde.

我是前年認識他的。

I met him the year before last.

Nèige shíhou wǒmen hái méi rènshi.

那個時候我們還沒認識。

At that time we had not yet met.

Tā shì yíge hěn hǎode rén, nǐ yīnggāi rènshi rènshi.

他是一個很好的人，你應該認識認識。

He is a very good person; you should

Note

yīnggāi, “should”

get to know him.

As a state verb, **rènshi** is used for “knowing” or “recognizing” Chinese characters.

Nǐ rènshi duōshǎo ge Zhōngguó zì?

你認識多少個中國字？

How many Chinese characters do you know/recognize?

Nǐ rènshi zhèige zì ma?

你認識這個字嗎？

Do you recognize this character?

Contrast the meanings of **rènshi** and **zhīdao**: **rènshi**, “to know” a person; **zhīdao**, “to know of” a person:

Nǐ rènshi Táng Xiǎojiě ma?

你認識唐小姐嗎？

Do you know Miss Táng?

Wǒ zhīdao tā, dànshi wǒmen méi jiànguò.

我知道她，但是我們沒見過。

I know of her, but we haven't met.

When a place is being discussed, **rènshi** means “to know how to get [there].” **Zhīdao** continues to mean “to know of [a place].”

Nǐ rènshi nèige diànyǐngyuàn ma?

你認識那個電影院嗎？

Do you know how to get to that movie theater?

Nǐ zhīdao nèige diànyǐngyuàn ma?

你知道那個電影院？

Do you know of that movie theater?

Notes on №5

5. A: **Bú rènshi.**
不認識。
I don't know him.
- A: **Búguò tīngshuō tā yě shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède, suǒyǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ jièshào jièshào.**
不過聽說他也是加州大學畢業的，所以想請你給我介紹介紹。
However, I have heard that he also graduated from the University of California, so I wanted to ask you to introduce me to him.

Shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède, “graduated from the University of California”: The name of a school or a word describing the type of school may stand in front of the verb **bìyè** with no preceding prepositional verb, such as **cóng**, “from.”

Nǐ érzi yǐjīng dàxué/zhōngxué/ xiǎoxué bìyè le ma?

你兒子已經大學/中學/小學畢業了嗎？

Has your son graduated from college/high school/elementary school already?

Tā dàxué hai méi bìyè ne.

他大學還沒畢業呢。

He has not graduated from college yet.

Tā shì Táiwān Dàxué bìyède.

他是臺灣大學畢業的。

He graduated from **Táiwān** University.

Bìyè may also be preceded by either **zài**, “at,” or **cóng**, “from.”

Nǐ shì zài nǎige zhōngxué bìyède?

你是在哪個中學畢業的？

What high school did you graduate from?

Wǒ qùnián cóng Dézhōu Dàxué bìyè le.

我去年從德州大學畢業了。

I graduated last year from the University of Texas.

Wǒ shì qībānián cóng Běijīng Dàxué bìyède.

我是七八年從北京大學畢業的。

I graduated from **Běijīng** University in '78.

Bìyè, meaning “to complete a course of study,” is a compound made up of a verb plus a general object. For this reason, the object **yè** may be separated from the verb **bì**. This separation occurs most frequently in sentences containing the **shì... de** construction.

Tā shì yījiǔqīliùnián bìde yè.

他是一九七六年畢業的。

He graduated in 1976.

Notes on №6

6. B: Méi wèntí. Wǒ kànkàn...hǎo, wǒmen xiànzài dōu yǒu gōngfu.
沒問題。我看看...好，我們現在都有功夫。
No problem. I'll take a look.... Okay, we are both free now.
- B: Nǐ xiànzài néng lái ma?
你現在能來嗎？
Can you come now?

The noun wèntí can mean “question,” “problem,” or “difficulty.”

Tā wènle hǎoduō wèntí.

他問了好多問題。

He asked a lot of questions.

Nà shì yige hěn dàde wèntí.

那是一個很大的問題。

That's a big problem.

Nǐ yǒu wèntí ma? could mean either “Do you have any questions?” or “Are you having any problems?”

Notes on №7

7. A: Xíng.
行。
That will be fine.
- A: Wǒ mǎshàng dào nín bàngōngshì lái.
我馬上到您辦公室來。
I'll come to your office right away.
- A: Chàbuduō bànge zhōngtóu jiù dào.
差不多半個鐘頭就到。
I'll be there in about half an hour.

The adverb mǎshàng (literally, “on horseback”) means “immediately,” “right away.”

Chàbuduō may be translated fairly literally as “does not differ much.” Other translations are “about,” “approximately,” “almost.”

Chàbuduō bādiǎn le.

差不多八點了。

It is nearly eight o'clock.

Zhèběn shū wǒ chàbuduō kànwán le.

這本書我差不多看完了。

I have almost finished reading this book.

Tāmen chàbuduō bādiǎn zhōng lái.

他們差不多八點鐘來。

They are coming at around eight o'clock.

Nàge xuéxiào yǒu chàbuduō sānbǎige xuésheng.

那個學校有差不多三百個學生。

That school has approximately three hundred students.

Notes Additional Required Vocabulary

8. jìde
記得
to remember
9. rènde
認得
to recognize, to know (alternate word for rènshi)
10. rènshi zì
認識字
to know how to read (literally, “to recognize characters”)
11. wàng
忘
to forget (alternate word for wàngji, especially in the sense of forgetting to DO something)
12. wánquán
完全
completely
13. xiǎngqilai
想起來
to think of, to remember
14. zuǒyòu
左右
approximately

The verb *jìde*, “to remember,” acts like a state verb.

Nǐ jìde Wáng Xiǎo Míng ma?

你記得王小明嗎？

Do you remember Wáng Xiǎo Míng?

Jìde. Tā shì wǒ àiren dàxuéde tóngxué.

記得。他是我愛人大學的同學。

I remember (him). He is my spouse's college classmate.

Wǒ zuótiān bú jìde tā xìng shénme. Jīntiān yòu xiǎngqilai le.

我昨天不記得他姓什麼。今天又想起來了。

Yesterday I couldn't remember what his name is. Today I remembered it (again).

Rènde, "to recognize," "to know," is usually interchangeable with rènshi. Both rènshi and rènde are most often made negative with bù.

Nǐ rènde ta ma?

你認得他媽？

Do you know him?

Bú rènde.

不認得。

No.

Tā lù yě bú rènde.

他路也不認得。

He doesn't even know the way.

Wǒmen qùnián hái bú rènde.

我們去年還不認得。

We did not know each other last year.

Wàng, "to forget," is an action verb.

Wǒ hěn róngyì bǎ rén míngzi wàng le.

我很容易把人名字忘了。

I forget people's names very easily.

Nimen dōu bǎ chēpiào ná lai le ma?

你們都把車票拿來了嗎？

Did all of you bring your bus tickets?

Wǒ wàng le.

我忘了。

I forgot (mine).

Wǒ méi wàng.

我沒忘。

I didn't forget.

Wánquán, "completely," is an adverb used to modify verbs.

Tā xiě de zì wánquán duì.

他寫的字完全對。

The character he wrote is completely right.

Tā wánquán bù dòng.

他完全不懂。

He doesn't understand any part of this.

Wǒ wánquán bù zhīdào zhèjiàn shì.

我完全不知道這件事。

I don't know anything about this matter.

Xiǎngqilai, “to think of,” “to remember,” is a compound verb of result. It is made up of **xiǎng**, “to think”; **qǐ** “to rise”; and **lái**, “to come.”

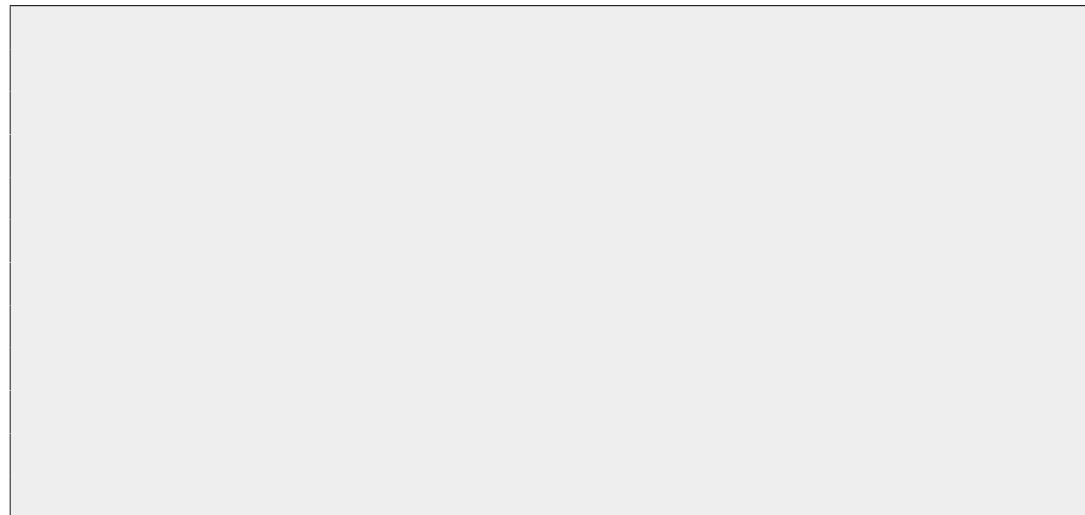
Note

Xiǎngqilai is actually pronounced **xiángqilai**. The ending **-qílái** is in the neutral tone; because **qǐ** was originally in the third tone, **xiǎng** changes to the rising tone.

As an ending showing result, **-qílái** may have either its literal meaning of “to come up” or more abstract meanings such as “to come to mind.”

Note

English prepositions, such as “up,” are also used both literally and abstractly: “look up the wall” (an upward motion) and “look up the phone number” (no motion indicated by “up”)



請把椅子辦起來。

Qǐng bǎ yǐzi bānqilai.

Please lift up the chair.

請你們站起來。

Qǐng nǐmen zhànqilai.

Please stand up.

那個字我想起來了。

Nèige zì wǒ xiǎngqilai le.

I remember that character.

Zuǒyòu (literally, “left-right”) means “approximately,” “about.”

Wǒ wǔdiǎn zuǒyòu lái jiē nǐ.

我五點左右來接你。

I will come to get you about five o'clock.

Nǐ qù mǎi diǎnr píngguǒ, hǎo bu hǎo?

你去買點兒蘋果，好不好？

How about going to buy some apples?

Yào duōshǎo?

要多少？

How many do you want?

Sānjīn zuǒyòu jiù gòu le.

三斤左右就夠了。

About three catties should be enough.

Drills

Transformation Drill

1. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

我有一件事想跟您打听打听。

I have something I would like to ask you about.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng yíjiàn shì.

我想跟您打听一件事。

I would like to ask you something.

2. Nèijiàn shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

那件事，我想跟您打听打听。

I would like to ask you about that matter.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng nèijiàn shì.

我想跟您打听打听那件事。

I would like to ask you about that matter.

3. Wǒ yǒu hěn duō shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

我有很多事想跟您打听打听。

I have many things I want to ask you about.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng hěn duō shì.

我想跟您打听很多事。

I want to ask you many things.

4. Zhèijiàn shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

这件事，我想跟您打听打听。

I want to ask you about this matter.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng zhèijiàn shì.

我想跟您打听打听这件事。

I want to ask you about this.

5. Tāde shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng

他的事，我想跟您打听打听。

I want to ask you about his affairs.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng tāde shì.

我想跟您打听打听他的事。

I want to ask you about him.

6. Wǒ yǒu jījiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

我有一件事想跟您打听打听。

I have something I would like to ask you about.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng jījiàn shì.

我想跟您打听一件事。

I want to ask you something.

7. Nǐde nèijiàn shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

你的那件事，我想跟您打听打听。

I want to ask you about your matter.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng nǐde nèijiàn shì.

我想跟您打听打听你的那件事。

I want to ask you about that matter about you.

Expansion Drill

1. Tāde míngzi wǒ wàng le.

他的名字我忘了。

I have forgotten his given name.

Tāde míngzi wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

他的名字我忘了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten his given name. Do you remember it?

2. Tāde dìzhǐ wǒ wàngji le.

他的地址我忘记了。

I have forgotten his address.

Tāde dìzhǐ wǒ wàngji le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

他的地址我忘记了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten his address. Do you remember it?

3. Tā shénme shíhou lái wǒ wàng le.

他什么时候来我忘了。

I have forgotten when he came.

Tā shénme shíhou lái wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

他什么时候来我忘了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten when he came. Do you remember it?

4. Nèibān fēijī jǐdiǎn zhōng dào wǒ wàngji le.

内板飞机几点钟到我忘记了。

I have forgotten what time the plane arrived.

Nèibān fēijī jǐdiǎn zhōng dào wǒ wàngji le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

内板飞机几点钟到我忘记了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten what time the plane arrived. Do you remember it?

5. Tā shì nǎinián dào Zhōngguo qùde wǒ wàng le.

他是哪年到中国去的我忘了。

I have forgotten when he went to China.

Tā shì nǎinián dào Zhōngguo qùde wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

他是哪年到中国去的我忘了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten when he went to China. Do you remember it?

6. Wǒmen zài nǎlǐ huàn chē wǒ wàngjǐ le.

我们在哪里换车我忘记了。

I have forgotten where we changed car.

Wǒmen zài nǎlǐ huàn chē wǒ wàngjǐ le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

我们在哪里换车我忘记了，你还记得吗？

7. Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén wǒ wàng le.

银行几点钟关门我忘了。

I have forgotten what time the bank closed.

Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

银行几点钟关门我忘了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten what time the bank closed. Do you remember it?

Expansion Drill

1. Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pàilaide.

听说他是刚派来的。

I have heard he was just sent over.

Cue

zhèli

这里

here

Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pài dào zhèli láide.

听说他是刚派到这里来的。

I have heard he was just sent over here.

2. Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pàiqude.

听说他是刚派去的。

I have heard he was just sent there.

Cue

nàli

那里

there

Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pài dào nàli qùde.

听说他是刚派到那里去的。

I have heard he was just sent over there.

3. Tīngshuō Lǐ Xiānsheng shì gāng pàilaide.

听说李先生是刚派来的。

I have heard Mr. Lǐ was just sent here.

Cue

Táiběi

台北

Táiběi

Tīngshuō Lǐ Xiānsheng shì gāng pài dào Táiběi láide.

听说李先生是刚派到台北的。

I have heard Mr. Lǐ was just sent back to Táiběi.

4. Tīngshuō Wáng Xiǎojiě shì gāng pàiqude.

听说王小姐是刚派去的。

I have heard that Miss Wáng was just sent there.

Cue Táinán
台南
Táinán

Tīngshuō Wáng Xiǎojiě shì gāng pài dào Táinán qùde.

听说王小姐是刚派到台南去的。

I have heard Miss Wáng was just sent to Táinán.

5. Tīngshuō tā gēge shì gāng pàilaide.

听说他哥哥是刚派来的。

I have heard that his brother was just sent here.

Cue Táizhōng
台中
Táizhōng

Tīngshuō tā gēge shì gāng pài dào Táizhōng láiide.

听说他哥哥是刚派到台中来的。

I have heard he was just sent back to Táizhōng.

6. Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pàiqude.

听说他是刚派去的。

I have heard he was just sent there.

Cue Gāoxióng
高雄
Gāoxióng

Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pài dào Gāoxióng qùde.

听说他是刚派到高雄去的。

I have heard he was just sent over there.

7. Tīngshuō nín shì gāng pàilaide.

听说您是刚派来的。

I have heard you were just sent over.

Cue zhèlì

这里

here

Tīngshuō nín shì gāng pài dào zhèlǐ lái de.

听说您是刚派到这里来的。

I have heard you were just sent over here.

Expansion Drill

1. Tā shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是加州大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of California.

Cue

yījiùsìwǔnián

一九四五年

1945

Tā shì yījiùsìwǔnián Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九四五年加州大学毕业的。

In 1945 he graduated from the University of California.

2. Tā shì Táiwān Dàxué bìyède.

他是台湾大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Táiwān.

Cue

yījiùwǔliùnián

一九五六年

1956

Tā shì yījiùwǔliùnián Táiwān Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九五六年台湾大学毕业的。

In 1956 he graduated from the University of Táiwān.

3. Tā shì Mázhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是麻州大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Massachusetts.

Cue

yījiùliùqīnián

一九六七年

1967

Tā shì yījiùliùqīnián Mázhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九六七年麻州大学毕业的。

In 1967 he graduated from the University of Massachusetts.

4. Tā shì Dézhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是德州大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Texas.

Cue

yījiùliùèrnián

一九六二年

1962

Tā shì yījiùliùèrnián Dézhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九六二年德州大学毕业的。

In 1962 he graduated from the University of Texas.

5.

Tā shì Běijīng Dàxué bìyède.

他是北京大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Běijīng.

Cue

yījiùsìqīnián

一九四七年

1947

Tā shì yījiùsìqīnián Běijīng Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九四七年北京大学毕业的。

In 1947 he graduated from the University of Běijīng.

6.

Tā shì Dōngběi Dàxué bìyède.

他是东北大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Dōngběi.

Cue

yījiùsānlíngnián

一九三零年

1930

Tā shì yījiùsānlíngnián Dōngběi Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九三零年东北大学毕业的。

In 1930 he graduated from the University of Dōngběi.

7.

Tā shì Nánjīng Dàxué bìyède.

他是南京大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Nánjīng.

Cue

yījiùsānqīnián

一九三七年

1937

Tā shì yījiūsānqīnián Nánjīng Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九三七年南京大学毕业的。

In 1937 he graduated from the University of Nánjīng.

Expansion Drill

1. Wǒ kànjianguo zhèige zì.

我看见过这个字。

I have seen this character before.

Wǒ kànjianguo zhèige zì, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi zhèige zì.

我看见过这个字，可是我不认识这个字。

I have seen this character before, but I don't recognize before, but I don't recognize it.

2. Wǒ zhīdao tā shi shéi.

I know who he is.

Wǒ zhīdao tā shi shéi, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi ta.

I know who he is, but I'm not acquainted with him.

3. Wǒ kànjianguo Zhāng Xiǎojiě.

我看见过张小姐。

I have seen Miss Zhāng before.

Wǒ kànjianguo Zhāng Xiǎojiě, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi Zhāng Xiǎojiě.

我看见过张小姐，可是我不认识张小姐。

I have seen Miss Zhāng, but I don't know her.

4. Wǒ qùguo nèige dìfang.

我去过那个地方。

I went to that place before.

Wǒ qùguo nèige dìfang, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi nèige dìfang.

我去过那个地方，可是我不认识那个地方。

I've been to that place, but I don't know it.

5. Wǒ zhīdao tā shi Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

我知道他是李科长。

I know that he is Chief Lǐ.

Wǒ zhīdao tā shi Lǐ Kēzhǎng, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

我知道他是李科长，可是我不认识李科长。

I know he is Section Chief **Lǐ**, but I don't know him.

6. **Wǒ kànjiànguo.**

我见过。

I have seen it.

Wǒ kànjiànguo, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi.

我见过，可是我不认识。

I've seen it, but I don't know it.

6. **Wǒ zhīdào tā shì Wáng Xiǎojiěde gēge.**

我知道他是王小姐的哥哥。

I know that he is Miss **Wáng**'s older brother.

Wǒ zhīdào tā shì Wáng Xiǎojiěde gēge, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi tā.

我知道他是王小姐的哥哥，可是我不认识他。

I know he is Miss **Wáng**'s brother, but I don't know him.

Transformation Drill

1. Chàbuduō bànge zhōngtóu jiù dào.

差不多半个钟头就到。

I'll be there in about half an hour.

Bànge zhōngtóu zuǒyòu jiù dào.

半个钟头左右就到。

I'll be there in about half an hour.

2. Chàbuduō yào yige zhōngtóu.

差不多要一个钟头。

Almost an hour.

Yào yige zhōngtóu zuǒyòu.

要一个钟头左右。

It will take about an hour.

3. Tā zhùle chàbuduō sāntiān.

他住了差不多三天。

He stayed for almost three days.

Tā zhùle sāntiān zuǒyòu.

他住了三天左右。

He lived for about three days.

4. Tā chàbuduō wǔshí suì le.

他差不多五十岁了。

He is almost fifty years old.

Tā wǔshí suì zuǒyòu le.

他五十岁左右了。

He is about fifty years old.

5. Nèiběn shū chàbuduō yào shíkuài qián.

那本书差不多要十块钱。

That book costs about ten dollars.

Nèiběn shū yào shíkuài qián zuǒyòu.

那本书要十块钱左右。

That book costs about ten yuan.

6. Chàbuduō yào zǒu sìshiwǔfēn zhōng.

差不多要走四十五分钟。

About forty-five minutes

Yào zǒu sìshiwǔfēn zhōng zuǒyòu.

要走四十五分钟左右。

It takes about forty-five minutes to walk.

7. Chàbuduō sānge xīngqī.

差不多三个星期。

Almost three weeks.

Sānge xīngqī zuǒyòu.

三个星期左右。

About three weeks.

Response Drill

1. Nǐ xiànzài lái ma?
你现在来吗?
Are you coming now?

Cue mǎshàng
马上
right away

Wǒ mǎshàng lái.
我马上来。
I'm coming right away.

2. Tā bādiǎn zhōng lái ma?
他八点钟来吗。
Is he coming at eight o'clock.

Cue chàbùduō
差不多
around

Tā chàbùduō bādiǎn zhōng lái.
他差不多八点钟来。
He comes around eight o'clock.

3. Tā shídiǎn zhōng qù ma?
他十点钟去吗?
Is he going at 10 o'clock?

Cue zuǒyòu
左右

Tā shídiǎn zhōng zuǒyòu qù.
他十点钟左右去。
He is leaving around ten o'clock.

4. Nǐmen xiànzài zǒu ma?

你们现在走吗？

Are you leaving now?

Cue

mǎshàng

马上

right away

Wǒmen mǎshàng zǒu.

我们马上走。

They are leaving right away.

5.

Tāmen bāhào qù ma?

他们八号去吗？

Are they going on the 8th?

Cue

zuǒyòu

左右

approximately

Tāmen bāhào zuǒyòu qù.

他们左右八号去。

They are going approximately around 8 o'clock.

6.

Tāmen jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái ma?

他们九点钟来吗。

Are they coming at nine o'clock.

Cue

chābùduō

差不多

around

Tāmen chābùduō jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái#

他们差不多九点钟来。

They will come around 9 o'clock.

7.

Nǐ shíhào zài Niǔ Yuē ma?

你十号在纽约吗？

Are you in New York on the 10th?

Cue

zuǒyòu

左右

approximately

Wǒ shíhào zuǒyòu zài Niù Yuē.

我十号左右在纽约。

I'm in New York around approximately the tenth.

Unit 8

References

Reference List

1. B: Wài, zhè shì Lǐbīnsī.
喂，這是禮賓司。
Hello. This is the Protocol Department.
A: Wèi, wǒ shì Láidēng Dàshǐ de mìshū.
喂，我是萊登大使的秘書。
Hello. I am Ambassador Leyden's secretary.
2. A: Dàshǐ jiēzháo nǐmen de qǐngtiē le.
大使接著你們的請帖了。
The ambassador received your invitation.
3. A: Hěn kěxī, yīnwei tā yǒu shì, Báyue jiǔ hào bù néng lái.
很可惜因為他有事，八月九號不能來。
Unfortunately, because he has a previous engagement, he cannot come on August 9.
A: Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào Qiáo Bùzhǎng.
請你轉告譙部長。
Please inform Minister Qiáo.
A: Hěn bàoqiàn.
很抱歉。
I'm very sorry.
4. B: Hěn yíhàn, Láidēng Dàshǐ bù néng lái.
很遺憾，萊登大使不能來。
We very much regret that Ambassador Leyden cannot come.
B: Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào yíxià.
我替你轉告一下。
I will pass on the message for you.
5. A: Mǎ Mínglǐ, wǒmen yǒu jǐge tóngxué Xīngqīliù jìhua dào Chángchéng qù wánr.
馬明理我們有幾個同學星期六計劃到長城去玩兒。
Mǎ Mínglǐ, a few of us students are planning to go to the Great Wall Saturday for an outing.
A: Nǐmen néng bu néng yìqǐ qù?
你們能不能一起去？
Can you go with us?

6. B: Zhēn bù qiǎo.
真不巧。
We really couldn't make that.
- B: Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù.
那天我們有事，沒辦法去。
We have a previous engagement that day; we have no way of going.
7. A: Xīwang yǐhòu zài zhǎo jīhuì jù yìjù ba.
希望以後在找機會聚一聚吧。
I hope that late we will find an other opportunity to get together.
- B: Hǎo a.
好啊。
Okay.
8. dàjiā
大家
everybody, everyone
9. jiēdào
接到
to receive (alternate form of jiēzhào)
10. tóngshì
同事
fellow worker, colleague
11. yīnggāi
應該
should, ought to, must

Vocabulary

bànfǎ	辦法	method, way
bàoqiǎn	抱歉	to be sorry
bùzhǎng	部長	minister (of a government organization)
Chángchéng	長城	the Great Wall
dàjiā	大家	everybody, everyone
jiě	姐	to receive (mail, messages, guests, phone calls)
jiēdào	接到	to receive
jù	聚	to assemble
jùyījù	聚一聚	to get together
kěxī	可惜	unfortunately, what a pity
Lǐbīnsī	禮賓司	Protocol Department (PRC)
méi bànfa	沒辦法	there's no way out, it can't be helped
mishū	秘書	secretary, executive assistant
qiǎo	巧	to be timely, to be opportune
qǐngtiě (qǐngtiē)	請帖	written invitation
tì	替	substituting for, in place of
tóngshì	同事	fellow worker, colleague
tóngxué	同學	classmate
yíhàn	遺憾	to regret (that something desirable will not happen)
yīnggāi	應該	should, ought to, must
zhuǎngào	轉告	to pass on a message, to inform
cānjiā	參加	to participate in, to join, to attend
dào xǐ	道喜	to congratulate
dièrtiān	第二天	the next day
jīngjībù	經濟部	Ministry of Economics
jūnshì yǎnxí	軍事演習	military maneuvers
láodòng mófàn	勞動模範	model worker
nánbù	南部	the southern part (of the island), the south
shàngxiào	上校	colonel
tīngdechūlái	聽得出來	to be able to recognize what something is from the sound

tóngxuéhuì	同學會	alumni association (literally, “fellow-student group”)
tōngzhī	同志	(written) announcement, notification
xièxiè tāde yāoqǐng	謝謝他的邀請	to thank him for his invitation
zhèngzhì xuéxí	政治學習	political study session
zhǔchí jiéhūn	主持結婚	to preside at a marriage ceremony (i.e., to give the bride away)
zǒng jīnglǐ	總經理	general manager (chief executive officer)
dàngāo	蛋糕	cake
qǐsī	起司	cheese

Reference Notes

Notes on №1

1. B: Wài, zhè shì Lǐbīnsī.
喂，這是禮賓司。
Hello. This is the Protocol Department.
- A: Wèi, wǒ shì Láidēng Dàshǐde mīshū.
喂，我是萊登大使的秘書。
Hello. I am Ambassador Leyden's secretary.

Lǐbīnsī, meaning “protocol department,” is made up of lǐ, “ceremony”; bīn, “honored guests”; and sī, “department.”

Mīshū means “secretary” in two senses: 1) a high-ranking official 2) a clerk-typist.

Notes on №2

2. A: Dàshǐ jiēzháo nǐmende qǐngtiē le.
大使接著你們的請帖了。
The ambassador received your invitation.

The verb jiē, “to receive,” may be used for receiving guests, mail, messages, and phone calls.

Jiēzháo (jiēdao), “to receive,” is a compound verb of result. The endings -zháo and -dào mean approximately the same thing: “to successfully obtain something” Jiēzháo and jiēdao occur in four ways: with le or méi (describing ACTUAL situations) and with -de- or -bu- (describing POTENTIAL situations)

我昨天去火車站接他，可是沒接着/接到。

Wǒ zuótiān qù huǒchēzhàn jiē ta, kěshì méi jiēzháo/jiēdào.

Yesterday I went to the train station to get him, but I missed him.

你早一點兒去接他，就接得着。

Nǐ zǎo yidiǎnr qù jiē ta, jiù jiēdezháo/jiēdedào.

If you go a little earlier, (then) you can get him.

明天要是來晚了就接不着/接不到他的電話。

Míngtiān yàoshi lái wǎnle jiù jiēbuzháo/jiēbudào tāde diànhuà.

If I am late tomorrow, (then) I won't (be able to) receive his phone call.

Qǐngtiē refers to a written invitation. The word is also pronounced qǐngtiē.

Notes on №3

3. A: Hěn kǎixī, yīnwei tā yǒu shì, Báiyuè jiǔ hào bù néng lái.
很可惜，因為他有事，白月九號不能來。

很可惜因爲他有事，八月九號不能來。

Unfortunately, because he has a previous engagement, he cannot come on August 9.

A: Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào Qiáo Bùzhǎng.

請你轉告譙部長。

Please inform Minister Qiáo.

A: Hěn bàoqiàn.

很抱歉。

I'm very sorry.

Kǎixī may be used as an exclamation: Zhēn kǎixī! "That's really too bad!"

Zhuǎngào means "to pass along [word of something]." Zhuǎn literally means "to turn" or "to transmit." Gào means "to tell," as in gàosu.

Bàoqiàn is an adjectival verb that means "to be sorry," "to feel apologetic" (e.g., for not fulfilling one's social obligations). Literally, bào means "to embrace [a feeling]," "to harbor [a feeling]." Qiàn means "apologetic feelings," "guilt feelings."

Notes on №4

4. B: Hěn yíhàn, Láidēng Dàshǐ bù néng lái.

很遺憾，萊登大使不能來。

We very much regret that Ambassador Leyden cannot come.

B: Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào yíxià.

我替你轉告一下。

I will pass on the message for you.

Yíhàn is a formal term used to express disappointment or regret that something desirable will not happen.

Tì, "for," "in place of," is a prepositional verb meaning in place of another, or in another's stead.

今天我替你教書。

Jīntiān wǒ tì nǐ jiāo shū.

I will teach for you today, (i.e., in your place)

我替你去。

Wǒ tì nǐ qù.

I will go for you. (i.e., instead of you)

To make a sentence containing tì negative, place bù or méi in front of the prepositional verb.

我不要替你去買菜。

Wǒ bú yào tì nǐ qù mǎi cài.

I don't want to go to buy groceries for you.

他沒替我來講話。

Tā méi tì wǒ lái jiǎng huà.

He did not come to speak in my place.

Both **gěi** and **tì** may be translated as “for.” **Gěi**, having a wider range of usage, would seem to overlap in some instances with **tì**. The more exact meaning of **tì** may be used to clarify a situation.

我給你買菜。

Wǒ gěi nǐ mǎi cài.

I will buy groceries for you. (WHO PAYS? DID you VOLUNTEER ONLY TO SHOP, OR TO PAY ALSO?)

我替你買菜。

Wǒ tì nǐ mǎi cài.

I will buy groceries for you. (CLARIFIED: you HAVE VOLUNTEERED ONLY TO SHOP, NOT TO PAY.)

Yíxià, “a bit,” is not translated, in No. 4. This word, adds to the action in the sentence a casual feeling, similar to the effect of reduplicating a verb. (Notice that this use of **yíxià** is different from previous examples, where the word meant “for a little while.”)

Notes on №5

5. A: Mǎ Mínglǐ, wǒmen yǒu jǐge tóngxué Xīngqīliù jīhua dào Chángchéng qù wán.
馬明理我們有幾個同學星期六計劃到長城去玩兒。
Mǎ Mínglǐ, a few of us students are planning to go to the Great Wall Saturday for an outing.
- A: Nǐmen néng bu néng yìqǐ qù?
你們能不能一起去?
Can you go with us?

Tóngxué means “fellow student” or “graduate of the same institution.” “Fellow worker” or “colleague” is **tóngshì**.

Chángchéng: Chang means “long,” and **chéng** is an old word for “city wall.” The full name of the Great Wall is **Wàn lǐ Chángchéng**, literally “10,000 **lǐ**-long wall.”

Note

One **lǐ** is approximately one third of a mile.

Néng, **kéyi**, and **huì** compared: All three of these auxiliary verbs— and therefore state verbs—mean “can” to some extent.

The core meaning of **néng** is “can, “to be able to,” “to be capable of.” In some cases, **néng** may also mean “may,” “to be permitted,” “could be/is possible,” and “to know how to

我的頭疼了，不能看書。

Wǒde tóu téng, bù néng kàn shū.

My head aches; I can't read.

上課的時候，不能說話。

Shàng kède shíhou, bù néng shuō huà.

Talking is not permitted during class.

芝加哥十一月就能下雪。

Zhījiāgē Shíyīyuè jiù néng xià xuě.

It can snow in November in Chicago. (POSSIBILITY)

他真能說話。

Tā zhēn néng shuō huà.

He really knows how to talk.

The core meaning of *kéyi* is “can,” “may,” “to be permitted to.” *Kéyi* may also mean “could be/is possible.” The permission implied by *kéyi* may come from an outside authority or may be self-imposed.

你可以走了。

Nǐ kéyi zǒu le.

You may leave.

從這個門進去，可以嗎？

Cóng zhèige mén jìnqu, kéyi ma?

May one go in through this door?

那兒的飯可以吃。

Nàrde fàn kéyi chī.

The food there may be eaten, (i.e., it is possible to eat it)

我不舒服，不可以游泳。

Wǒ bù shūfu, bù kéyi yóuyǒng.

I don't feel good; I can't go swimming. (i.e., the speaker decides that he should not go)

The core meaning of *huì* is “to know how to,” “can.” *Huì* is often used for an activity that was learned, in contrast to *néng* for activities that “can be done” because of a person's physical condition (“Can she get out of bed yet?” *Tā néng bu néng xià chuáng?*). The other main use of *huì* is to indicate possibility. Here it overlaps with both *néng* and *kéyi* in meaning “could be/is possible.”

你的兒子會走路了嗎？

Nǐde érzi huì zǒu lù le ma?

Can your son walk now? (BABY LEARNING TO WALK)

你會說英文嗎？

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

Can you speak English?

明天會下雨。

Míngtiān huì xià yǔ. I

t might/will rain tomorrow.

他不會不來。

Tā bú huì bù lái.

It is not possible that he won't come.

Notes on №6

6. B: Zhēn bù qiǎo.

真不巧。

We really couldn't make that.

B: Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù.

那天我們有事，沒辦法去。

We have a previous engagement that day; we have no way of going.

Bù qiǎo literally means “inopportune,” “not timely.”

Méi bànfa: Bànfa means “method,” “way.” Within a sentence, méi bànfa is used as “there is no way to...,” “there is no way that...” Used independently, méi bànfa means “nothing can be done,” “it can't be helped,” “there is no way out.”

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

8. dàjiā

大家

everybody, everyone

9. jiēdào

接到

to receive (alternate form of jiēzhào)

10. tóngshì

同事

fellow worker, colleague

11. yīnggāi

應該

should, ought to, must

Literally, dàjiā means “big family.” When dàjiā is the subject of a sentence, dōu is often placed before the verb.

大家都知道他是誰。

Dàjiā dōu zhīdao tā shì shéi.

Everyone knows who he is.

謝謝大家。

Xièxie dàjiā.

Thank you all.

請大家坐下來。

Qǐng dàjiā zuòxiàlai.

Would everyone please sit down.

我們大家一起去吧。

Wǒmen dàjiā yìqǐ qù ba.

Let's all go together.

Yīnggāi is an auxiliary verb which is followed by another verb in a sentence. Only **bù** is used to make **yīnggāi** negative.

不謝，這是我們應該做的事。

Bú xiè, zhèi shì wǒmen yīnggāi zuòde shì.

Don't thank us. This is something we should be doing.

這件事情很要緊，你應該馬上去辦。

Zhèijiàn shìqing hěn yàojin, nǐ yīnggāi mǎshàng qù bàn.

This is a very important thing; you should (go) take care of it right away.

一個大學畢業的人，不應該有這樣的想法。

Yíge dàxué bìyède rén, bù yīnggāi yòu zhèiyangde xiǎngfa.

Someone who has graduated from college shouldn't think this way.

Drills

Expansion Drill

1. Tā zài Wàijiāobù Lǐbīnsī gōngzuò.

他在外交部礼宾司工作。

He works at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs [in] the Protocol Department.

Cue

wǔlóu

五楼

fifth floor

Tā zài Wàijiāobù Lǐbīnsī gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài wǔlóu.

他在外交部礼宾司工作。他的办公室在五楼。

He works at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs [in] the Protocol Department. His office is on the fifth floor.

2. Tā zài zhèr gōngzuò.

他在这儿工作。

He works here.

Cue

qīlóu

七楼

seventh floor

Tāde bàngōngshì zài qīlóu.

他在这儿工作。他的办公室在七楼。

His office is on the 7th floor.

3. Tā zài Jiānádà Dàshìguǎn gōngzuò.

他在加拿大大使馆工作。

He works at the Canadian embassy.

Cue

lóushàng

楼上

upstairs

Tā zài Jiānádà Dàshìguǎn gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài lóushàng.

他在加拿大大使馆工作。他的办公室在楼上。

He works at the Canadian embassy. His office is upstairs.

4. Tā zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

他在北京工作。

He works in Běijīng.

Cue

Guānghuá Lù

光华路

Guānghuá road

Tā zài Běijīng gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài Guānghuá Lù.

他在北京工作。他的办公室在光华路。

He works in Běijīng. His office is on Guānghuá Road.

5. Zhāng Tóngzhì zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò.

张同志在上海工作。

Comrade Zhāng works in Shànghǎi.

Cue

Nánjīng Lù

南京路

Nánjīng road

Zhāng Tóngzhì zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài Nánjīng Lù.

张同志在上海工作。他的办公室在南京路。

Comrade Zhang works in Shanghai. His office is on Nánjīng Road.

6. Wáng Nǚshì zài yínháng gōngzuò.

王女士在银行工作。

Mrs. Wáng works in a bank.

Cue

èrlóu

二楼

first floor

Wáng Nǚshì zài yínháng gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài èrlóu.

王女士在银行工作。她的办公室二楼。

Ms. Wáng works in a bank. Her office is on the second floor.

7. Wèi Shàoxiào zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

魏少校在物管处工作。

Major Wèi works at the défense attache office.

Cue

sānlóu

三楼

third floor

Wèi Shàoxiào zài Wùguǎnchù gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài sānlóu.

魏少校在物管处工作。他的办公室在三楼。

Major Wei works at the défense attache office. His office is on the third floor.

Response Drill

1. Dàshǐ jiēzháo qǐngtiě le ma?

大使接着请帖了吗？

Has the ambassador received the invitation yet?

Cue not yet

Dàshǐ hái méi jiēzháo qǐngtiě.

大使还没接着请帖。

The ambassador has not received the invitation yet.

2. Tāmen dōu jiēzháo qǐngtiě le ma?

他们都接着请帖了吗？

Have they all received the invitation yet?

Cue not all

Tāmen méi dōu jiēzháo qǐngtiě.

他们没都接着请帖。

They have not received the invitation yet.

3. Nǐmen jiēzháo Bùzhǎngde qǐngtiě le ma?

你们接着部长的请帖了吗？

Have you received the minister's invitation?

Cue yes

Wǒmen jiēzháo Bùzhǎngde qǐngtiě le.

我们接着部长的请帖了。

We have received the minister's invitation.

4. Tāmen jiēzháo Dàshiguǎnde qǐngtiě le ma?

他们接着大使馆的请帖了吗？

Have they received the invitation from the embassy?

Cue already

Tāmen yǐjīng jiēzháo Dàshiguǎnde qǐngtiě le.

他们已经接着大使馆的请帖了。

They have received an invitation from the embassy.

5. Nǐmen jiēzháo Dàshìguǎnde qǐngtiě le ma?

你们接着大使馆的请帖了吗？

Have you received the invitation from the embassy?

Cue not yet

Wǒmen hái méi jiēzháo Dàshìguǎnde qǐngtiě.

我们还没接着大使馆的请帖。

We haven't received an invitation from the embassy.

6. Tā jiēzháo qǐngtiě le ma?

他接着请帖了吗？

Has he received the invitation yet?

Cue no

Tā méi jiēzháo qǐngtiě.

他没接着请帖。

He hasn't received the invitation.

7. Nǐ jiēzháo Wùguǎnchùde qǐngtiě le ma?

你接着物管处请帖了吗？

Have you received the invitation from the défense attache office?

Cue yes

Wǒ jiēzháo Wùguǎnchùde qǐngtiě le.

我接着物管处请帖了。

I have received the invitation from the défense attache office.

Expansion Drill

1. Tā bù néng lái.
他不能来。
He cannot come.

Cue kěxī
可惜
unfortunately

Hěn kěxī, tā bù néng lái.
很可惜，他不能来。
Unfortunately, he cannot come.

2. Tā xué Zhōngguó huà xué de bù hěn hǎo.
他学中国话学得不很好。
He doesn't learn Chinese very well.

Cue kěxī
可惜
unfortunately

Hěn kěxī, tā xué Zhōngguó huà xué de bù hěn hǎo.
很可惜，他学中国话学得不很好。
Unfortunately, he does not learn Chinese very well.

3. Tā méi lái.
他没来。
He didn't come.

Cue yíhàn
遗憾
regret

Hěn yíhàn, tā méi lái.
很遗憾，他没来。
Sadly, he didn't show up.

4. Tāmen bù néng dōu lái.

他们不能都来。

They cannot all come.

Cue

bàoqiàn

抱歉

sorry

Hěn bàoqiàn, tāmen bù néng dōu lái.

很抱歉，他们不能都来。

I'm sorry they couldn't all come.

5.

Tāmen dōu bù lái.

他们都不来。

They are not coming.

Cue

kěxī

可惜

unfortunately

Hěn kěxī, tāmen dōu bù lái.

很可惜，他们都不来。

Sadly, none of them are coming.

6.

Tāmen dōu bù néng qù.

他们都不能去。

None of them can go.

Cue

bàoqiàn

抱歉

sorry

Hěn bàoqiàn, tāmen dōu bù néng qù.

很抱歉，他们都不能去。

I'm sorry, but none of them can go.

7.

Tā hái méi qù.

她好没去。

She still didn't go.

Cue

yíhàn

遗憾

regret

Hěn yíhàn, tā hái méi qù.

很遗憾。她好没去。

Unfortunately. She didn't go.

Expansion Drill

1. Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng.

请你转告张部长。

Please inform Minister Zhāng.

Cue

wǒ

我

I

Qǐng nǐ tì wǒ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng.

请你替我转告张部长。

Please inform Minister Zhāng for me.

2. Wǒ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng le.

我转告张部长了。

I informed Minister Zhāng.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng le.

我替你转告张部长了。

I'll inform Minister Zhāng for you.

3. Tā hái méi zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

他还没转告李科长。

He didn't inform Lǐ Kēzhǎng yet.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Tā hái méi tì nǐ zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

他还没替你转告李科长。

He hasn't inform Section Chief Lǐ for you yet.

4. Tā bù néng zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

他不能转告李科长。

He cannot inform Section Chief **Li**.

Cue

wǒ

我

I

Tā bù néng tì wǒ zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

他不能替我转告李科长。

He couldn't inform Section Chief **Li** for me.

5.

Wǒ yǐjīng zhuǎngào dàshǐ le.

我已经转告大使了。

have informed the ambassador.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Wǒ yǐjīng tì nǐ zhuǎngào dàshǐ le.

我已经替你转告大使了。

I have already informed the ambassador for you.

6.

Wǒ míngtiān jiù zhuǎngào dàshǐ.

我明天就转告大使。

I'll inform to the Ambassador tomorrow.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Wǒ míngtiān jiù tì nǐ zhuǎngào dàshǐ.

我明天就替你转告大使。

I will inform the ambassador for you tomorrow.

7.

Tā shì zuótiān zhuǎngào dàshǐ de.

他是昨天转告大使的。

He informed to the ambassador yesterday.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Tā shì zuótiān tì nǐ zhuǎngào dàshǐde.

他是昨天替你转告大使的。

He informed the ambassador for you yesterday.

Transformation Drill

1. Tāmen míngtiān lái.
他们明天来。
They are coming tomorrow.

Cue yìqǐ
一起
together

Tāmen míngtiān yìqǐ lái ma?
他们明天一起来吗?
Are they coming together tomorrow?

2. Tāmen zuótiān lái le.
他们昨天来了。
They came yesterday.

Cue yìqǐ
一起
together

Tāmen zuótiān shì yìqǐ lái de ma?
他们昨天是一起来的吗?
Did they come together yesterday?

3. Tā míngtiān zǒu.
他明天走。
He leaves tomorrow.

Cue yíge rén
一个人
alone

Tā míngtiān yíge rén zǒu ma?
他明天一个人走吗?
Will he go alone tomorrow?

4. Tā zuótiān zǒu le.

他昨天走了。

He left yesterday.

Cue

yíge rén

一个人

alone

Tā zuótiān shì yíge rén zǒude ma?

他昨天是一个人走的吗？

Did he go alone yesterday?

5.

Wáng Tóngzhì míngtiān qù Nánjīng.

王同志明天去南京。

Comrade Wáng is going to Nánjīng tomorrow.

Cue

zuò huǒchē qù

坐火车去

by train

Wáng Tóngzhì míngtiān zuò huǒchē qù Nánjīng ma?

王同志明天坐火车去南京吗？

Will Comrade Wáng take the train to Nanjing tomorrow?

6.

Wáng Tóngzhì Xīngqīyī qù Shànghǎi le.

王同志星期一去上海了。

Comrade Wáng went to Shànghǎi on last Monday.

Cue

zuò fēijī qù

坐飞机去

by plane

Wáng Tóngzhì Xīngqīyī shì zuò fēijī qù Shànghǎide ma?

王同志星期一是坐飞机去上海的吗？

Did Comrade Wáng fly to Shànghǎi on Monday?

7.

Tā qù le.

他去了。

He went.

Cue

yíge rén

一个人
alone

Tā shì yíge rén qùde ma?

他是一个人去的吗？

Did he go alone?

Substitution Drill

1. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng qù.

那天我们有事，不能去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we cannot go.

Cue

méi bànfa qù

没办法去

no way of going

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù.

那天我们有事，没办法去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we have no way of going.

2. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù.

那天我们有事，没办法去。

That day we have a previous engagement; there is no way to go.

Cue

bù néng yìqǐ qù

不能一起去

cannot go together

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng yìqǐ qù.

那天我们有事，不能一起去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we cannot go together.

3. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng yìqǐ qù.

那天我们有事，不能一起去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we cannot go together.

Cue

bù néng dōu qù

不能都去

not all of us can go

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng dōu qù.

那天我们有事，不能都去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we cannot go together.

4. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng dōu qù.

那天我们有事，不能都去。

That day we have a previous engagement;

Cue

dōu bù néng qù

都不能去

none of us can go.

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, dōu bù néng qù.

那天我们有事，都不能去。

none of us can go

5. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, dōu bù néng qù.

那天我们有事，都不能去。

That day we have a previous engagement; no one can go.

Cue

méi qù

没去

did not go

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi qù.

那天我们有事，没去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we didn't go.

6. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi qù.

那天我们有事，没去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we didn't go.

Cue

méi dōu qù

没都去

not all of us went

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi dōu qù.

那天我们有事，没都去。

That day we have a previous engagement; not all of us went.

